

MARIANVS,
OR,
LOVES HEROICK
CHAMPION.

Describing
HIS HONORABLE
Travailes and haughty at-
tempts in Armes, with his
successe in Love.

Intermixed with ma-
ny pleasant Discourses,
wherein the Graver Sort
may take delight, and the
Youthfull be encouraged by
Honourable and Worthy
adventures to gaine
Fame.

LONDON.

Printed by B. Alsop and T. Fawcett,
and are to be sold by James Bickert
at his shop at the Inner Temple
Gut. 1644.



MARIANUS

OR

LOVE'S
Heroick
Champion



London
Printed by
B. Allsop & T. F.
and is to be sold
by James Becket
at his shop at the
Temple Gate
1641.



A. E. 13.

MARIANVS,
OR,
LOVES HEROICK
CHAMPION.

Describing
HIS HONORABLE
Travailes and haughty at-
tempts in Armes, with his
success in Love.
Intermixed with ma-
ny pleasant Discourses,
wherein the Craver sort
may take delight, and the
Youthfull be encouraged by
Honourable and Worthy
adventures to gaine
Fame.

LONDON.
Printed by R. Alsop and T. Fawcett,
and are to be sold by James Beckett
at his shop at the Inner Temple
Gate. 1644.

MANLY

OF
LOVES HEROIC
CHASTITY

By
THE AUTHOR

1711

Printed by



Printed by

Printed by

Printed by

Printed by

Printed by

Printed by

Printed by

TO
THE VVORTHY
Gentlemen Students
in the foure famous Hou-
ses the Ianes of Court.

GENTLEMEN, I have the
 honour to see you (the glorious
 hopes of vertue, & her
 dependant, honour) I
 humbly present this
 following historical Discourse, of
 which the allowed value hath
 made men willing to publish it. In it
 you shall find instructive Morality;
 judicious Policy and imitable Va-
 lour; the absoluteness of many is
 reason temper it with considerati-
 on, and Justice arme it with resolu-
 tion. The stile perhaps may seeme
 to want that oylie smoothnesse

A 3 which

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

which some Subjects of like nature
have lately been varnished with:
but your discerning judgements
will allow the Authors election, to
affect matter more then words. The
compliments of a Garden is to
have fruits as well as flowers in it:
neither can the eye give the body
any nourishment. As the outward
Ornaments of a Barquer, vlesse the
palate relish the inward Delicates:
they are the superfluous, which
turne. It is the reading which
grow to you from the inward
fingers, (which of necessity cannot
but in some sort arrive your sever-
all affections) I take my end for
which I published this notation
of the state and duty of the
lawing to you all in generall,
by a new and old way, and
method, which is not
common, and which
I hope may be
of some use to you.
I am, Sir, your
Obedient servant,
J. B.

THE
Contents of this Booke.

CHAP. I.

How Charondus, Prince of Carman-
nia, upon report of the exceeding
beauty of Amoretta, Daughter and wife
to Castalinus, King of Trebifond, became
inamoured, and fell into an extreme
passion, whose sickness the King and
Queene, Father and Mother of Arma-
tius, so much grieved to behold, that their
griefes caused their perils of lifes.

CHAP. V. read II.

How Diphilus one of the Nobles of
Trebifond, coming to take his leave of
the Prince Armatius, playing a game at
Chesse, vnto whom Diphilus giving the
Matte, the Prince Armatius on the
sudden struck him with the Chesse-board.

CHAP. VI. read III.

How the Prince Armatius calling to
him the wrong offered the Lord Diphilus

The Contents.

was sorrowed for it, accusing himselfe of
great ingratitude for the same, in disre-
specting his State and Country, &c.

CHAP. IV.

How Armatius recovering health,
sought opportunity to leave the Court,
his Kingly Father and Mother, to see
the Germanian Court, which suddenly
he obtained, and what happened him on
his Journey.

CHAP. V.

How the Prince Armatius departing
so suddenly from the Court, caused the
heaviness and great sorrow of the King
and all his Subjects, which he bewailed
in this weefull manner.

CHAP. VI.

How Armatius Prince of Carmania
arrived at the Court of Tichisland, in
habits of a Merchant, employing his
skill in Merchandise. Suddenly after
the Emperors Son Onocorn Barbocoffe
with a great force both by Land and Sea
commanded the Country of Tichisland
for that the Prince's Ambition was de-
stroyed him in Marriage, whereof he bewailed
the loss.

CHAP.

The Contents.

CHAP. VII.

How Armatius, naming himselfe Marianus, desirous to show his force in defence of his Lady and Love the Princessse, gallantly offered his service to the King of Trebisond, and what happened him.

CHAP. VIII.

How King Castallana graciously accepted the proffered service of the Prince Armatius, now under the name of Marianus a Merchant, and how by the Princessse Amoreena, he was invested with the Order of Knight-hood, by the name of Loves Heroick Champion.

CHAP. IX.

How the Knight Marianus, having mustered his Companies, made suite to the Princessse, that she with the King might be pleased to take view of them, and of their gracious acceptance of his forwardnesse, and her admirable favours, from which he was so much delighted, and how a Herald, from the Camp of Ottoman, arrived at the Court.

CHAP. X.

How the Germanian King, after he had spent some time in search for the Princessse's departure, arrived himselfe from the Court, Pilgrims like, as tired in search of

The Contents.

his Sonne the Prince, the Queene with
griefe for the King and her Sonne dyed.

CHAP. XI.

How the Embassader from the Turke
delivered a very peremptory message
from his Lord, in disgrace of the Trebi-
soud King, and dishonour of his Princely
Daughter: the Heroick Champion, at
his great sute obtaineth the Kings fo-
wne to issue forth upon them, &c.

CHAP. XII.

How Marianus accompanied with a
gallant Troope, assailed the Turke in his
Campe, against whom he obtained a most
honourable victory.

CHAP. XIII.

The Princess Amoretta falleth in love
with her Champion Marianus, he arriveth
at the Court in great honour, presenting
the Turkish Prince with his Bawber
with their pleasant Discourses at their
meetings, and honors done to Loves He-
roick Champion.

CHAP. XIV.

How Maximilian King of Hungarie,
who had suffered many wrongs at Sea, by
pirates was brought on shore in Trebi-
soud in a Rafter, with his royall entera-

The Contents

Entertainment by the Gentlemen of the Countrey, and his honourable welcomes to the Court by the King and his Nobles.

CHAP. XV.

How Marius being now in Court do fight of his Love and Lady, affections began to revive, and a melancholy passion possess him, which was noted of many, but chiefly of the Princess, with their honorable party and favourable proffers.

CHAP. XVI.

How the King of Hungaria commended with the King of Ireland. The Princess Amoretta discovereth her love. The Heroick Champion by a Letter searcheth the Princess lodging. The Knights betwixt her to the Princess.

CHAP. XVII.

How Love Heroick Champion pursued Syntha, the Princess, waiting upon her to deliver her Letter, and their party.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Syntha hasteneth to the Princess Lodging, unto whom after many private communications on both parts, she delivered the Letters, and how she obtained grace with the Princess for her pains, with her resolution to love, &c.

CHAP.

The Contents.

CHAP. XIX.

How Loves Heroick Champion was brought to the Princeesse presence by Syri-
tha, their loves being discovered, consens
was of both parties agreed upon so love.
The Knight discovereth himselfe to the
Princeesse: unto whom he unfoldeth all his
love, with the originall proceedings.

CHAP. XX.

How the Kings of Trebilon and Hun-
garia, hunted with great delight and
what hapned them, with a pleasant dis-
course of a simple Country-man, whom
with his Mother, the two Kings by chance
met whilke, &c.

CHAP. XXI.

How the King of Trebilon furnish-
ed the Hungarian King with forces to
warre against the Kingdom, of which
Loves Heroick Champion is General
with other Admirall at Sea, and be-
nourable conquests by Land, &c.

CHAP. XXII.

How the Emperour of Constantinople
was most graciously offended with
some of his subjects, and by persua-
sion of his Nobles sendeth his Kinsman
and other great gifts, &c.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII. read XXVI.

How the Lord Parinthus describeth
unto the King the whole estate, and de-
termination of the Usurper, who flying
from the forces of the puissant army, is
by Loves Heroick Champion pursued
and taken, whom he sendeth forth prisoner
to the Princess Amoretta to Trebisond.

CHAP. XXVII.

How old Machaon sometime Tutor to
the Prince Armatius, now Loves Heroick
Champion had answer from the Oracle
at Delphos, how the Prince lived, and
what joy he conceived thereof, and still
continued his search for him.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the Trebisond King dyed, leaving
the Kingdom to that Princess Amoretta,
the King of Hungaria wooeth her Sister
the Princess Timoclea for Diphilus.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Loves Heroick Champion, having
settled the King Diphilus in his King-
dom, well furnished with a Fleet of gallant
Galleyes arrived in Trebisond, and
was welcomed of the Lord high Admi-
ral Remnius, who met him in the Har-
bour.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

How the Knight waiting opportunity
met the Queen in her Garden of pleasure
and their parley, and what happened be-
tween the Knight and Syntia.

CHAP. XXXI.

How the Nobles of Hungaria, having
received great favours and graces from
the Queen and her Nobles, departed.
The Queen summoned a Parliament, in
which the State doth consent that the
marry Love Hercock Champion, and a
Crowned King and Queen of Trebond
and Carmania.

CHAP. XXXII.

How the Lord of Trebond, that Rulgrim-
ly hath translated many Countries, an-
died of the Prince Armatus, arrived
in the Court of Trebond, where the King
questioned of his Country and how he
did on the spot. He says he has Tatar
Rulers, who have recent time him of
the troubles of his Country of Carmania.
He goes on to tell of the Queen, and
of the death of the Ambassador, and the
Kingdom of Carmania.

Here ended the Contents.



MARIANVS

OR,

LOVES Heroicke

Champion.

CHAP. I.

How Charondus, Prince of Carmania, upon report of the exceeding beauty of Amoretta, Daughter and heire to Castalinus, King of Trebisond, became inamour'd, and fell into an extreame passion, whose sickness the King and Queene, Father and Mother of Armatius, so much grieved to behold, that their griefes caused their perills of life.



At this time Charondus reigned King in Carmania, as their ancient annals record. Castalinus likewise Iwayed the

B

Di-

Diademe in *Trebisond*, a Prince so highly renowned for all honourable actions, as that few such in his time lived.

This *Castalinus*, in the blooming of his Princely yeares, desirous to leave issue to his Noble house, joyned in marriage with *Eugenia*, daughter and sole heire to *Constantius*, Emperour of *Germany*, by whom in short time after their Nuptials, he had issue one daughter, who was named *Amoretta*.

This Princess) as in comelinesse of person she exceeded, so for her beauty, wisdom and other good graces, there lived none her equall; the report of whose excellence, as Fame advances with her loudest trump, the honourable (especially) such peerlesse creatures, as this Princess (yea) so highly stood she graced in the Gods favour, that none but *Amoretta's* beauty was remembered in most Princes Courts, both Christian and Heathen.

The renewne of whose peerlesse beauty, so often blazed, came to the hearing of *Armatius*, Sonne and Heire apparant to the *Carmatian* King, who upon the surpassing praises by every one given of this Lady, begun more and more upon hearing such severall reports, to conceive an inward Ioy of her, diligently hearkening to each stranger which should recount her vertues and honour, by vertue gained.

Long had not this honour followed the lovely Prince *Armatius*, but Love the soveraigne guide of mens thoughts, had so enthralled him, that all his delight was in contemplating of this Princesses beauty.

Yea, so was he overtaken in loves snare, that nothing was pleasing unto him, but the sweet remembrance of *Amoresta*: so much was his delight in her, that oftentimes in the midst of his pastimes, calling the Princess to mind, he would as one past himselfe, altogether overcome with melancholy,

abandon the company of his most familiars, seeking from their pleasing pastimes some solitary place, where he might unheard or seene, recount with large amplifications the Princesse beauty, whose servant in mind he was wholly vowed. Thus dallied *Armatius* so long with beauties flame, that overtaken with the vehemencie thereof, he fell into an extreame Fever, which in such strange manner assailed him, as the learned Physitians could not find any reason of Disease. much lesse procure his health, who languished in love, nor daring to disclose his griefe to any, or acquaint his trustiest companion with his love. This sudden alteration of the Prince, in whose welfare the comfort not onely of his companions in Court, but generally of the commons consisted, moved them all to such exceeding griefe, that in short time their lovely countenances were so much altered, that neither pleasing looke, nor cheerefull word, was to be obtained from them.

The King, whose aged life depended on the happinesse of his Son, as fathers how

how base for ever, delight in vertuous
Off-springs, much more the Noble,
whose honours are to be maintained by
their progenie; the aged King, whose
greatest felicity was in the Prince, was
with such infinite griefes oppressed,
that in short time his body was so
weakened, that rather he desired to ac-
company the dead, then live in such
discontent: the Mother Queene, with
over much care and watching neere
pined, and few which felt not some
part of the Princes griefe; such was
their faithfull loves unto him, whereof
the Father gloried not a little, and the
Mother (if women may be proud) was
not a little spiced with the Disease. And
neither the bountie of the Father, the
extreame griefe of the Mother, the daily
lamenting of the Courtiers, nor the
complainers of the Commons, might
any way availe the Prince, who smother-
ing his owne sorrow, could not by all
Art (Physicke allowed for mens re-
liefe) be any way comforted. The over-
grieved burthen of whose miserie, the
Queene with his Kingly Father seeking

to ease, and could not, as he desired accomplish, such extremity likewise assailed them, that the learnedst could not judge the difference betweene them, (so that by their ill) suppose the subjects griefs, which reverently honoured them, and could willingly have offered their owne lives for their reliefe and ease.

But in vaine strive they, that seeke helpe for him whom none but the beautifull *Amoretta* could release, who was the Load-starre of his life: and the love of her, the speciall Physicke which must restore him, or die he would past recovery, but by *Amoretta*, that Patron of fame, *Dianas* glory, Nations onely darling, and delight.

Weake and feeble, past recure of Physicke, became the King and Queen, voyd of hope ever to see their Princely sonnes recovery: wherefore, forgetting all worldly pleasure and Princely delights, such as become Princes of so high esteeme, quite abolishing all the vanities of the world, they mind wholly the everlasting comfort, and joy in
nothing

nothing, but his death, that from death,
by his blood redeemed them.

In this extremity, when all hopes
were past helpe of men, behold the mercie
of him that preserveth and destroy-
eth at his pleasure, who moved no
doubt, at the intercession of some of
their vertuous subjects, or taking pittie
of their distresse, as wee read in holy
writ, testimony of our soules comfort,
how *Abraham* beloved of God, moved
his divine Deitie, for those Cities for
sinne by just Judgement consumed, if
five godly people had been found with-
in their walles, they had beene preser-
ved: so either for the vertues of the
King, or the intercession of those sor-
rowing subjects, the giver of all com-
fort sent them comfort, as you shall
heare.

The *Carmanian* King, whose prime
of youth was spent in many honorable
actions, holding in great regard the
love of his neighbour Princes, lived in
such tranquillity, that he was honoured
of all that heard of his government.
The report of whose long sickness

and weaker state, moved the Kings of
divers Regions, by their embassage,
to comfort them, and so be advertised
of the truth of their estates. Amongst
which, those honourable Princes that
held his health in such regard, *Cassianus*
King of *Trebisand* dispatched his
Ambassadour, Who for the more ho-
nour of their King, was accompanied
with divers Gentlemen, both of honour
and great worship.

These Ambassadors arriving at
the Court of *Germania*, their cause
of coming unknowne, many matters
were of the commons supposed (who
intermeddle with Princes affaires)
amongst them: divers things
were imagined, and sundry dangers su-
spected, but no assurance of any, untill
their day of hearing, which the King
appointed to be as suddaine as they
could require.

Against which time, royall prepara-
tion was made, with all the pompe that
could be devised, where for Feasting,
there wanted no dainties, how rare soe-
ver, nor dignity of *Vyandes* to please
the

the appetite, with many pleasing shewes, and pastimes, the better to give them occasion of well come: all which, notwithstanding the Kings weaknesse, was so exquisitely performed, that it was admirable.

The day of hearing come (as time stayeth not) *Charonau* having summoned his Counsell and chiefest Nobility, against that time to attend his pleasure: these severall Ambassadors were brought to his presence, where with more shew of hearty well come, then his weake body could deliver, he gave the such honorable entertainment, as becomed the Messengers of such Princes, and highly contented them, whose courtesie the Strangers Nobles applauded, and grieved the more at his extremity, by how much the more they saw his debility.

After some talke passed betweene the King and these Nobles, and that he had enquired with all kindnesse of the health of their Princes, and welfare of their Countries, and received their Letters, with divers Princely presents,

B. 5. — they

they were dismissed but yet not suffered to depart, without gracious thanks to their Kings, and kind shew of good acceptance for their paines, leaving them to their repose, with great charge to his Nobles and those in authority, to see their entertainment such, as if their soveraigne Lords were present: which charge was not forgotten of those which prized their Princes honours as deere as their lives, but with such pompe and cost accomplished each severall command of his Highnesse: as the strangers might well admire to behold it. Their Dyets so diverse and so abundant, as they had never seene the like, furnished with so much sundry musicke, and so cunningly vsed, as might well delight the Gods. To acquaint you with other pastimes for recreation, as Playes, Maskes, Tilting, Turneying, Barriers, and other Courty Pastimes, beside their hunting of Tygers, wilde Bores, and Lyons, which moved such delight as other sports pleasing unto them. Thus in using daily those pleasures when the Nobles had spent some time

in the Court, every one content with his royall entertainment hearing amongst the Nobles of the Country such generall honor of the Prince *Armatius*, whom they had not yet scene, an especiall desire moved them to visit the Prince, bewayling greatly, that such adverse chances, should nip so brave and honourable a Prince, in the blooming time of his princely yeares.

The Prince *Armatius*, albeit the imbecility of his body denied those Nobles his presence at their pastimes, in which severall sport he much delighted, yet that they might not depart of him unscene he commanded a sumptuous Banquet in his Lodging to be ordained: to which hee invited the stranger Nobles and their Companies: who willing to see the Prince were as glad to accompany him, as he desirous of their company, and graciously with many humble thanks, accepted the Princes good will. The youthfull Nobles attendant on the Prince, carefull to see each thing ordered, for the honor of his Majesty, wanted nothing that might be desired

they were dismissed but yet not suffered to depart, without gracious thanks to their Kings, and kind shew of good acceptance for their paines, leaving them to their repose, with great charge to his Nobles and those in authority, to see their entertainment such, as if their soveraigne Lords were present: which charge was not forgotten of those which prized their Princes honours as deare as their lives, but with such pompe and cost accomplished each severall command of his Highnesse: as the strangers might well admire to behold it. Their Dyets so diverse and so abundant, as they had never seene the like, furnished with so much sundry musicke, and so cunningly vsed, as might well delight the Gods. To acquaint you with other pastimes for recreation, as Playes, Maskes, Tilting, Turneyng, Barriers, and other Courtly Pastimes, beside their hunting of Tygers, wilde Bores, and Lyons, which moved such delight as other sports pleasing unto them. Thus in using daily those pleasures when the Nobles had spent some time

in the Court, every one content with his royall entertainment hearing amongst the Nobles of the Country such generall honor of the Prince *Armatius*, whom they had not yet scene, an especiall desire moved them to visit the Prince, bewayling greatly, that such adverse chances, should nip so brave and honourable a Prince, in the blooming time of his princely yeares.

The Prince *Armatius*, albeit the imbecility of his body denied those Nobles his presence at their pastimes, in which severall sport he much delighted, yet that they might not depart of him unscene he commanded a sumptuous Banquet in his Lodging to be ordained: to which hee invited the stranger Nobles and their Companies: who willing to see the Prince were as glad to accompany him, as he desirous of their company, and graciously with many humble thanks, accepted the Princes good will. The youthful Nobles attendant on the Prince, carefull to see each thing ordered, for the honor of his Majesty, wanted nothing that might be desired

desired, onely expected the coming
of their Guests, who not unmindfull
of their promise, as dinner time drew
nigh, prepared themselves towards the
Prince, unto whom by his Nobility in
most gorgious manner they were con-
ducted: no sooner entred they his
presence, but *Arminius*, whose courte-
sie was such as gained the love of his
subjects, and all Strangers that had
seene his demeanor, yet at this time had
better knowledge how to entertaine
them, then ability to performe what he
would, stretching himselfe in his bed,
as his weake limbes would suffer him,
he gave them such hearty welcomes, as
highly contented them, and besecured
their estates. These Nobles when they
had made their Eyes witnesses, of what
report had so often bruted, rather accus-
ed report of greet wrong, in not giving
him such due as he deserved, then of
over much praise: for that the fame
bruted of him, was not to bee valued
with his worthinesse. The time of
Dinner passed they, with many glan-
ces on the Prince, noting his courtesie,
but

but ever lamenting his griefe, and wishing his health, framing themselves, to pleasant Discourses, to put him from those melancholy thoughts, wherewith he was overmuch burthened. Thus with much diversity of Table-talk, consumed the time, the graver sort, of shatters for benefit of the State, the greener heads, whose years required no other titles of their pleasing pastimes and pleasure, the managing their horses, commending the stardinesse of their bodies, their finenesse in careering, their bravery in their Corner, and excellens swiftenesse in their gallop, their readinesse in hand, and their courage in the face of the Enemy: not omitting the gallant cries of their Hounds, nor forgetting, by which and which, such a Bucke was slaine, and such a Stagge pul'd down, passing nor, without high commending the losing of their hawks, nor forgetting their stardinesse in flight, with their fierce seizing on their Game. And then for variety, as occasion is ministred, Carouse a health to their Mistresse and Lover, in their Country.

The Prince as lovely as the best, and in his health as well able to performe whatsoever, had his greatest comfort in listening to the talke of *Diphilus* and *Ephestus*, two noble men of *Trebisond*, which accompanied of pleasure *Fabritius*, the chiefe in Commission for their King *Armatius*, earnestly noting these two Nobles of *Trebisonda* as most delighted with their persons and pleasantly, heard *Diphilus* carowse a health to the Princesse *Amoretta*: whose name the distressed Prince no sooner heard uttered; but the remembrance of that sweet object, his lives sole health, and Mistresse of his fancies, so revived his dying spirits, that suddenly the beholders might well perceive his wan colour, which urged a troubled spirit to vanish, and those Vermillion dyed Roses, the wonted Badges and Ornaments of his sweet Face, challenge their former interest, and for a time possesse them, restoring unto Nature her due, making his lovely countenance as cheerrull to the beholders, as the glorious Sunne to the captived, whose liberty being deprived, have long been.

debarred of all wordly delights, and
seldome received comfort from that
heavenly essence. This cheerfull altera-
tion in the Prince was noted of divers,
whose eares, albeit busied in listening to
the discourses of these strangers; yet the
eyes of his owne attendants, with duti-
full care gave heed vnto the Prince. A-
mongst whose government the care of
the Princes health was committed, *Ma-
chaon*, a man for his art famous & lear-
ned in his profession (which was Phy-
sick) who sometime was tutor vnto him,
noting this sudden change in the Prince,
supposing verily by his countenance,
that some of their speeches did moove
him to content, coming suddenly to
him, and grasping his arme felt his pul-
ses beat so fiercely as in long time they
had not done the like; which made him
more considerately search, to finde
the cause of this motion, enquire it
hee durst not, doubting to move him
to melancholy, having so often bene
denyed, but resting by him a while
continuing with his arme grasped, he
felt the Pulse more and more to worke;
which

which gave him the more cause to find, it he might, the originall from whence it came, and noting diligently unto which of the company hee most inclined his Eyes, hee might perceive *Diphilus* and his *Ephestus* earnestly busied in their former talke, which was, I dare say, neither of Religion, nor of Government of the State, yet was it such as *Marthaon* perceived highly contented the Prince, and desired it might long continue, so it were for his Lords good. Many pretty questions passed betwene them, and much variety, in whole prattle many a faire Lady was commended by one, and for Argument as highly of the other discommended, in which humour were diuers of the Nobilitie of the Country, and Ladies of worth by name questioned of, and many a youthfull pranke by themselves committed, yet all in friendship, and kindly taken, though harsh frumps passed sometimes between them, which moved them to much mirth. But when in earnest *Ephestus* forgetting himselfe, falling from one matter to another,

ther, & that there should be a judgement given, who for beauty was the onely Paragon, *Ephestus* for affection commended *Medolina*, Daughter and sole Heire of *Himerus*, King of *Epire*, in whose Fathers Court, hee had long beene trained vp, giving the price from their owne Countre Ladies. Whereas *Eiphilus*, as if he had been the sworne Champion of their Land, moved at his rash censure, forgetting the reverence of this place, told him flatly his judgement was false, and that he would avow: offering his glove in combat, to maintaine that the Princesse *Amoretta*, and none but she, deserved the name of beautifull: whose wisdom, and other good graces, in any one, was not to be found in the circuit of the earth: and therefore *Ephestus* (quoth he) thou hast done overmuch wrong, to derogate the honour due to *Thracian* Dames, especially our Peeresse *Amoretta*, whose Face if beauteous *Helena* lived, for whom so many thousands lost their lives, she might well resigne that Title of the onely faire, to her, and none

but she; whose like liveth not.

Ephestris who was wise and well demeaned, perceiving this partly begun in jest, likely to end in quarrell, noting likewise, how the rest of the company ceased their serious talke, to attend them, with a smiling countenance, as one not possest with choler, brake off his talke thus.

Why (my Lord) shall matter of so small moment cause friends to jarre? What is beauty, whereof wee have so long disputed, and so highly of us regarded? Nothing but a fading pleasure, an ornament of the face which maketh the heart proud, and draweth the mind from every good motion to many odious offences, whereby the honourable in committing dishonourable actions are so blemished, that they become a common by-word to the veriest drudge that Nature hath framed, *Helena* was faire, and accounted the onely of her time, yet who so much scorned? *Cressida* beautifull, yet who more false? If beauty be attended on with such shame as these two famous women gained,

why should we care who is beautifull?
My sweet *Diphilus* mistake me not, if
I have passed my judgement rashly, for
neither care I whose name in that case
is esteemed or defamed, but passe them
by as things of no regard; onely for ar-
gument I have spoken more then either
regard or account of: therefore let
not this be any breach of our friendship,
for I protest, if thou shouldst say, the
white Swan were as blacke as the Ra-
ven, the Ocean dry, and Ships floating
on the maine; I would affirme it, ra-
ther then our friendship should be for
such a matter discontinued.

Well *Ephestris* (quoth *Diphilus*) I
inde your kindnesse great, and will
thanke you for it, but trust me, this
cloze may not serve your turne, for as
you have spoken heresie against Beauty
and maintained a stranger before your
home-borne Ladies, you shall either re-
vocate your judgement, before our sove-
raine Princess *Amoretta*, or receive
such penance by your quest assigned,
which I promise thee shall be all hono-
rable Ladies. O my Lord (answered *Ephe-*
stris) I

I hope I shall find your Honour more
 kind, then for so small an offence
 deliver your Friend Prisoner at the
 Bar, where the parties shall be Judges
 and my Jury such, as all Lawes allow
 me to appeale from, if you should; and
 my fault such, as if my life were in the
 tryall depending, I might well make
 my Testament, and dispose of what
 I possesse, heartily desiring God to re-
 ceive my Soule; for sure I am, my body
 should not long enjoy Breath: for
 greater Corrasive can be offered the
 Sex, then to attribute the honour
 such a prize, to any one particular, the
 all standing on tearmes of Beauty,
 the Crow which thinkes her owne
 Birds the fairest: so Women how ill
 faced and wrinkled, soever they be
 may not endure to heare any commen-
 ded, if happily they should heare
 spoken by such as they dare not
 Speech displease, yet will their coun-
 nance shew their Hearts discontent,
 scrowling of the Browes, hanging
 Lip, or setting a sweet Face, as frowne
 as the Gall, or by some such outward

actio

ction or other, shall you find where
that nip't her, for which offence looked
he never so highly, with Bell, Booke
and Candle, you shall be cursed, and ne-
ver more come in her *Pater noster*, how
deepe soever you have beene in her
Creed.

Hold, hold, *Ephestris* (quoth *Di-*
philus) too much of one thing is good
or nothing. Thou hast plaid the
excellent Orator. Who had thought
your Lordships experience had beene
such, for thereon I know you ground
all your authority: Author I am sure
in Schooles you never read any, which
have so highly abused that sacred Sex,
sacred I may well call them, my *Ephe-*
stris, who are not honoured of Mortall
Creatures, but of the Gods, and there-
fore in the higher account, and the
more in regard, the greater thy offence,
and the more grievous thy punish-
ment.

To this pleasant Discourse the whole
Assembly gave eare, and were greatly
delighted therewith, yet to put them
from

from it, and to end as pleasantly, *Fabritius* said :

My Lord *Diphilus* ; what, is your honour become Beauties Champion. Farre was it from my thought, that ever you would with such earnestnesse have defended our faire Ladies, but since I see you are so great an Advocate, I will cause you to have thanks for it as our returns, other reward I dare promise none. And you my Lord *Ephesius*, that so clarkely have depraved them, would I might be your Scholler, whose experience is so great, *Tully*, *Ovid*, or *Marcus Aurelius*, that wrote most in their disgrace, never writ so largely. I must needs say, as my Lord *Diphilus*, our Ladies are little beholding vnto you, for the danger, committed in the same, the least is heresie, and how heresie is to be punished your honor knoweth : yet my Lord, as I would gladly become a peacemaker, and that friends may not grow at odds, whereby any danger might happen to your person, albeit the offence be not pardonable, yet the fault made in a forraigne country ought there to have

this

this tryall. If it shall stand with your good liking, no Ladies present to heare your hard censure, your favour may be the more: and since I have by patience of this honourable company, intruded my selfe to speake in our Ladies cause, not being a fced Counceller for them, I will intreat these noble Gentlemen to give me leave, and let me censure of the same, so it stands with your Lordships good pleasure.

Now truly, quoth *Ephestris*, I find your Lordship is kind, and more kind then I can desire or deserve, when I shall need your favour in matter of more import, I will make bold: till when, I put you down with *Diphilus* for one of my small friends, for this matter I shall need small friendship, vnlesse to bring your cause to better effect, you doe as many crafty people now a dayes vse, to make small conscience, in selling mens Soules to the Diuell for money, to swear what he shall command them, how false soever, to the impoverishing of many, whose good hospitality, & other good neighbourhood,

barhood was more then ever such base
villains could reach unto, if such a Co-
paniō you met me with, or serch out some
subrill Lawyer that can by his quirk
and quiddities in Law, make a bad mat-
ter good, and annointing the Iudge
with *Engagement* *upon* *me*, cause him to
incline to the same, my Cake is dough,
if by such Subornations, or Swearing,
and false Iudgement, my Speech be
wrested to your advantage.

Cease my *Ephesius*, this dread,
Heavens forfend, for this offence thy
punishment should be as thou de-
servest, much lesse that any sinister
meanes should be used to bring thee to
open Penance: yet good *Ephesius* for
me intreat thee; as in this Assembly
thou hast unjustly given the prize of
Beauty to *Medullina*, and therein
thou hast wronged highly the glory of
the World, by thy parciall Iudgement,
in derogating from her the Title of
most excellent, which is most Honou-
rable, and no more than her worth re-
quireth; confesse but thy fault and
error in the same, and an end it thou
lovest

lovest thy owne good, refuse not this offer, least worse befall thee then *Athenes*, or to *Paris* for his rash judgement. Thou hast learned us in thine own *Exordium*, that women are inspired with minds of revenge. Be therefore by thy friends entreated, before the punishment come vpon thee, so maist thou keepe thee from much sorrow, for if no greater mischiefe fall vpon thee thou shalt be sure of more curses, then thy weak carcasse can beare: for my *Ephesus*, in friendship I say this, and warne thee as one that loveth thee, knowing their inuinations, which as thy selfe confelleth bent to revenge: if so, as many as shall beare of this blasphemy, if they do thee any other ill, their cursing thou shalt beare of, and womens curses, are as bad as the curse of holy *St. Gillion*, which is said to be ten times worse then the Devils.

Treason, treason, my Lords, quoth *Ephesus*, if I have spoken hereticke, this questionlesse is no better then treason, and the comparison so odious as may not be endured, the Diuell and a woman
C joyned

joynd in one) as fit a match as may be made. Well my Lord, since in my error I have found you kind in favouring my fault, let vs doe as all bribing Officers vse, beare with me, and I'll hold with thee: so by concealing my fault the lesse dangers shall happen vnto you if you refuse my kind offer, I come vpon you with an old Proverbe (ka mee) (k thee) or as children play, (tell of me, I'll tell of thee.) Well watcht my Lord *Ephesris*, quoth the whole company but my Lords, let the further hearing of this matter rest, till better opportunity, least your tediousnesse, breed trouble to my Lord the Prince, whome quiet, I would not willingly offend.

My honourable Lords, answered the Prince, if these discourses of these Noble men be pleasing to your honour assure you, they are no way offensive vnto me, I have troubled you from your better cheere, to accept of a sick mans pittanec, whersvnto you are so heartily welcome, as to your own Pallaces, (and welcome) saith our Countrey householders, is the best

dish, at their feasts: if therefore my Lords you accept my welcome, I am the more honoured by you, which have so graciously vouchsafed mee your companies.

Then turning to the Lord *Diphilus* he said, for you my good Lord, how much I acknowledge my selfe indebted to you, I omit, and yeeld you as many thousand thanks for your pleasing speech, as there were sillables in your words: you have like your selfe defended the weaker sexe, for the which were I the Princeesse *Amoretta*, your challenge made in my cause, should be honourfully rewarded: I am sorry my good Lord, my bad hap was such, that I knew you no sooner. But if it shall stand with your Lordships pleasure, may during the time of your abode here, to vouchsafe me your company, so it may be no disparagement to your serious affairs: periwade your self, your welcome shall be no better in any place then vnto me, for which kindnesse, you should binde me vnto your friendship. Gracious Prince, answered the Noble

C 2

Diphilus.

Diphilus, thanks for your Princely fa-
vour, and gracing me thus, which am
not any way to doe your Majesty ser-
vice, but wherein your Highnesse shall
command, I shall be ready with all du-
tifulnesse to accomplish.

Leave these speeches good my Lord,
quoth the Prince, and offering duty
where friendship is requested, and gran-
ting my sute, let me enjoy thy compa-
ny, so shalt thou command *Armatius*
for ever as a friend.

The graver sort of those Noble stran-
gers, whom matters of more impor-
tance called away, after humble
thanks given for their royall enter-
tainment, wishing health and all hap-
pinesse vnto his Excellence, they com-
mit him to his rest.

Alchaon which had endured the
end of all these prattles, and perceiving
that this talke was altogether frivolous
and not worthy the hearing, moove
him to delight: he began diligently
enter each particular discourse of
Diphilus and *Ephestus*, and considered
to note each severall passion of the

Prince

Prince : so farre searched this skillfull
Physitian into every particular, that
canvassing it thoroughly, he noted his
speciall jesture, and how his colour
came (and vanished) yea how much
his heart was possessed with joy, when
he heard the Princess *Amorella* named:
the working of his pulses, made *Ma-
chaon*, imagine the cause of his disease,
yet had no assurance thereof, and to
enquire it of the Prince was in vaine,
for that he had so often denied the
same : wherefore he concealing his
thoughts, in hope to worke meanes for
his recoverie, and finding those cinders
which were like to consume him, (and
he rather) if he could procure *Diphi-
lus* to accompany him. Thus leaving
the Prince to his quiet, and *Machaon*
to his care, for recovering his health, re-
turne we to the aged weake King.

The King whose long sickness, and
care of his wife and sonnes health,
whom he loved most zealously, being
extremely vexed, and greatly weak-
ned of his body, when Physick had done
what was possible, and small hope to

Recover him, in the midst of his passions when all hopes was past, but only the comfort of him who by his word rayseth the dead from the grave, so this (*Charondas*) received comfort by his Kingly neighbours friends, whose letters when he had by Councell perused, and with regard and advise, noted each kind offer, with their perswading reasons, (albeit) he could hardly digest the same: yet considering how frail men are, and that our cares of Terraine joyes, are to be fastened to that Celestiall commander, which releeveth all those that seeke him, he received himselfe, and like a faithfull Souldier, taking hold of the promise in holy writ so often repeated, he cast care of wife, child and Kingdome, upon him, that first gave it him, and by whose providence he so long enjoyed them: taking his chiefest care to gratifie those his friends by whose counsell he was vrged to the heavenly comfort. And those honorable Nobles for their paines, wishing to be with their friends in their owne Countries, attend his High-

nee

nelle pleasure, for answer: which he took order should with each speed be dispatched, as possible might any way be vsed.

Armatius, whose heart was on his blasphemy, vowing his love wholly to the Princesse *Amoretta*, was so delighted in recounting her praise, as nothing could be so pleasing, but as all sorts of men infected with that agony (if their love be faithfull) are enclined to some jealousie, so this monstrous Basiliske, whose poyson infecteth the veines, and consumeth the heart, without wisdoms governe the minde, as by this Prince notably appeared: who in his idlet thoughts, calling to mind the praises of *Diphilus*, and the challenge made in the defence of the Princesse *Amoretta*, as love endureth no arrivall, so *Armatius* stricken with the sting of jealousie, began to conceive many vnhonourable thoughts of *Diphilus*, supposing *Amoretta* was his Love, and that by *Diphilus* his joyes in her love, and hope of favour, should be frustrate and of no account: with much matter more, then

ever was by *Diphilus* imagined, how largely soever his speech was vsed in the Princesses behalfe, to procure their delights, and mooue *Ephestris* to choicer: notwithstanding no reason might perswade, where jealousy had given judgement, for the Prince in this jealousy, sought no meane, but revenge of him that never committed the least thought of euill against him.

When revenge in this Princes heart was thus imprinted, and rage and jealousy set downe his death, an honourable motion, more besitting his Grace then rigour, moeued by the inspiration of the eternall God, withdrew him from this base attempt, he called to minde, the honour of his house, the love of those Princes, their bordering neighbours, by whose command, *Diphilus* came into this Country, the scandall so bloody a fact deserved, and what continuall ignomy would redound vnto him and his progeny for ever: accusing himselfe of great impiety, he exclaimed on his follies in this manner,

2773

Blush

Blush *Armarus*, at thy base thoughts,
and so much sorrow for thy pretended
mischiefe, against this noble stranger, as
if thou hadst shed the blood of a thou-
sand innoſents: haſt thou from thy
Cradle diſdained to offer wrong to the
moſt inferiour, and wilt now begin
with murder of a Noble man? Know-
eſt thou not, that to adde to his head one
haire, is more then the greateſt Prince
can doe? And wilt thou ſeek his life that
never had thought of ill againſt thee?
Haſt thy Father lived ſo many yeares
honorably reputed amongſt them, ever
in tranquility, and by thy cruell ſlaught-
ering thy friend, ſhall their peace be
broken, was it not for his comfort and
thy good, theſe ſtrangers came into this
country? and for their kindneſſe, canſt
thou reward them with ſuch deſpight?
Thou envieſt the happineſſe of a toward
gentleman, for thou knoweſt not what,
(ſay he loved the Princeſſe) what is
that to thee, inreſt haſt thou none, to
barre him from it. *Amoretti* thou
knoweſt not but by heare ſay, he a No-
ble man of her country, a toward Gen-

A. S.

tleman

rleman, and worthily may obaine her.
 Nature hath made him of the mould of
 the earth, whereof thou art framed,
 the Begger is as subject to amorous
 passions as the Prince. *Amoretti* is beau-
 tifull, wise, faire, and in þe principall time
 of her flourishing estate, lovely as the
 dewe on the sweet Roses. *Disphilus* val-
 ant, well featured; wise and toward, in
 all honorable actiōs, all which are lead-
 starres to draw Ladies to love, and *Amo-
 retti* is but a woman though a Princess.
 If then thou hast neither feare of God,
 or law of humanity to perswade thee
 from so great a mischief, yet let his
 kindnesse offered thee, which hath been
 as much as ever thou requirest, be of
 some regard. The fiercest beasts seldome
 harme those, whose society they vse,
 and wilt thou be found more cruell
 then vnrasonable creatures: No, no,
Armatius, let dye thy malice to *Disphi-
 lus*, who is innocent, and farre from any
 thought of pretended euill against thee,
 for so much the more shall his blood
 with extremity be revenged, by how
 much the more, thou vnjustly, injurist

him, yea rather chuse to dye a thousand
deaths, if every life were a Legion of
lives, then hold so base a mind. Thou
hast long (though to thy great griefe)
and much sorrow concealed thy love
to *Amoretta*, and now wilt thou mur-
ther him that wisheth thee well : for
her love.

No, no, *Armatius*, let honor be the
marke whereat thou aymest, - account
death more precious then life with ig-
nominy, honor by murder blemished,
is such a staine as can never be-raced
out, but the continuall ignominy there-
of, will remaine while there is any be-
ing : Yea, and what is more to be regar-
ded, & welfare of thy Subjects on whom
the blood of so noble a man will be with
great effusion revenged, and thy coun-
try like those ruinous monuments of
Troy layd wast and desolate, which was
spoyled for a fault nothing so odious.

Since thou hast all these reasons
to reduce thee from this vile thought,
dally no longer with thy shadow, as in the
tale of *Aesop* thou maist read, of the
dog; who moved with envy, of anothers
welfare

welfare, not onely hazarded his life, but what else he had in possession. Though the comparison be ridiculous, yet the example may move thee to feare thine owne fall. For if the Gods be so just in punishing such offences in vnreasonable creatures, how much more shalt thou be plagued, whom God hath not onely endued with reason, but invested with titles of Majesty and honor; whose life should shine on the earth, as the glorious Sun, and by thy vertues drawe such as live vnder thy government, from their desire to commit evill; for such as is the Pastour, such will be the flocke: if the Prince be vertuous, the Subject will feare to offend, if he be vicious, who will care to live in obedience of him, or his lawes. Thou seest *Armatius*, the perill surcease therefore thy base thoughts (and as *Diophilus* is Noble) where thou hast without desert beene jealous, become jealous from envying him, that no way wished thee evill; admit him to thy friendship, to him thy kindness may be acceptable, and in vying such favours, maist thou in
living.

time learne the truth of what thou now
supposest. If *Diphilus* love *Amoretta* he
cannot be so secret, but in some sort
or other, thou shalt attaine to the
knowledge thereof: and as thou shalt
in converling with him, finde his Ho-
nourable dealings, so maist thou either
trust him or refuse him: If *Amoretta*
have vowed her love vnto him, seeke
to master thy affection, and wish them
joy, if not, his friendship may the sooner
bring thee to thy desires, by acquainting
the Princess with thy love, in explaining
the passions for her thou hast endured.

Amoretta (saith the worlds report) is
beautifull, wise, and honorably demea-
ned, and therefore cannot be cruell: her
father a King beloved of all that have
heard of him, whose kindnesse hath
been such to thy Father and thee, as thou
canst not deserve; if such love remaine
in the parents, the children should not
hate: then fondling, if thou hast wrong-
ed thy self in concealing thy griefe, ac-
cuse thy owne follies; and condemning
not thy friends of evill, nor let thy jea-
lousie blame *Diphilus* who never had
thought

thought of preſeſſed euill againſt thee;
 if thou faile in thy love, blame none but
 thy ſelfe, ſpare to ſpeake, ſpare to ſpeed.
 Cowards neuer were Loves Champions;
 nor fainthearted ſwads obtained Ladies
 love, women though neuer ſo baſe, will
 be ſued, ſought after, and courted with
 many deuiles allured to win them; and
 their loves obtained, as ſundry meanes
 ſought to continue it.

A Novice art thou *Armatius*, & neuer
 came to know what many a hardy man
 at armes hath endured, Hiftories are di-
 vers, which ſhew the extreames of Prin-
 ces and famous Conquerours, that they
 endured through love, yet haſt thou ne-
 ver read of any that ever wooed by ſi-
 lence, courted their Miſtreſſes with ima-
 ginations, or obtained their love being
 mute: Longer maiſt thou ſmother thy
 griefe; w^{ch} may curles conſume thee:
 fire ſuppreſſed burneth wth more vehe-
 mency, & love concealed coſumeth the
 intrals & ſlayeth remedileſſe. How long
 may thy ſhoe wring thy foot, before a-
 ny that looke thee in the face can tell
 where it pincheth thee. Many of meane
 birth

birth have obtained the love of Princes
and Ladies of great worth, and by da-
ring, to attempt, wedded and bedded
them. If the ignoble have had such suc-
cesse in love. Runne thee distant from
this loathsome cabiner, arme thee with
hopes of thy Mistresse favour, and with
courage seeke to obtaine it: let grieve
no longer oppresse thee, but like the
Son of thy renowned father, shew thy
selfe; let not daring love, which by ma-
ny good motions may be vanquished,
overthrow thee by subjecting thy selfe
overmuch unto it, but in the face of the
enemy shew thy selfe; and there by
prowesse purchase such renowne, as the
report of thy valor, may gaine thee the
love of her thou most desirest. Womens
loves for the most part are settled on the
valiant and such as adventure, holding
in regard such as by their valor, can &
will maintaine their honours, bearing
in triumph their favours in the
field; and gaining honour in their
titles. I, thus *Armatus* should be thy
thoughts, hold thee there, and no doubt
of good successe: *Amoretta* is but

woman

woman though a Princess, thou sonne
to a King, and no way her inferiour.
Then continue this resolution and *A-*
moretta may in time, as well seeke thy
favour, as the noble Amazonian *Alex-*
anders love.

CHAP. V.

How Diphilus one of the Nobles of
Trebisond, coming to take his leave
of the Prince Armatius, playing a
game at Chesse, unto whom Diph-
ilus giving the Matte, the Prince
Armatius on the suddaine stricke
him with the Chesse-board, and what
then followed.



Scarcely had hee ended this
tedious premeditation,
when word was brought
unto him by one of his
Pages, that the Lord *D-*
iphilus was come to visite him, which
did put him from all further imagina-
tions at that time.

Diphilus

Diphilus no sooner came to his presence, but *Armarus* with a blushing countenance bad him welcome, ashamed of his rash suspicion; yet concealing the same as he might, framed such kind speech as he best could, the better to assure his welcome, not sparing oftentimes to render great and hearty thanks for his kindnesse in comming to visit him; and more, to shew how glad he was of his company, hee called to rise, which he had not done long before, but for necessity of making his bed. Thus when long time was spent betwene them, discoursing of many matters, to both their contents, *Armarus* called for meate; whereto to accompany *Diphilus*, he received more sustenance than he had in many dayes before, to the great joy of his attendant *Macbaen*, who by messengers certified the King and Queen thereof, who joyed and were not a little comforted at this report.

Dinner ended, and *Diphilus* with the Prince devising to beguile the time, loth suddenly to leave him, called for a Chess bord,

bord, wherewith they sported a while
Armatius whom griefe of minde procu-
 red soone to melancholy, loosing two or
 three faire games, became very impati-
 ent, to aggravate whose choller and make
 his fury the more, *Diphilus* playing for
 euning to make game, tooke his *Queen*
 and gave cheeke to his King, whereas
 the Prince forgetting both himselfe and
 other those motions so lately by him
 minded, so violently striking him with
 the boord, ranne fiercely on him, and ta-
 king him by the throat, cryed mainly on
 thus; Villaine quoth hee, shamest thou
 not to rob me of my Lady, my Love, my
 life and fortune, comfort, but to my teene
 must cheeke me therewith in mine owne
 Countrey. (O chafe fugitive) thou shalt
 heare me no more therewith, for by this
 miserable death, will I recover to mine
 owne possession, my Love, my Lady, my
Queen, yea in despite of thy head, *Moretta*
 shall be my mistress, sweet Prince-
 esse, the only soveraign of my thoughts.
Machaon and his noble attendants
 seeing this friendship lately profess'd
 suddenly forgotten, taking him with

brod

much

much adoe from *Diphilus*, were not a little perplexed, but as men past themselves, having never seen the like, could imagine no cause, greatly doubting that suddenly he was growne lunaticke.

Diphilus vexed at this hard usage of the Prince, was no sooner freed from him, but in great choller would have departed; Protesting to be revenged for this discourtesie offered him. Affirming, that his enticing speeches in colour of kindnesse, was to no end but to draw him from his honourable friends to murther him.

Macbaon carefull what might ensue hereof, weighing each occasion which might hereat be taken, besought *Diphilus* of that love hee bare the King his master, which had used them honourably, of his love to his owne King, and all that might be imagined to conceive of this wrong offered as of no such pretended matter, as he supposed: but rather with patience to consider the long extreame sicknesse of the Prince, & how subject by reason of his infirmity hee was unto melancholy, undertaking on

on his faith and honest reputation, how ever the occasion grew, it was not in malice : assuring him, the Prince when he should call to minde this unkind action, would with griefe lament it, and sorrowing for the same, submit himselfe, craving hearty forgivenesse for his rashnesse.

Machaon vexed at the heart for these unkind dealings of the Prince, intreating his associates to perswade *Diphilus*, went himselfe to the Prince, and after dutifull speech to his Grace, reconciled unto him, in what evill part *Diphilus* took this abuse by him offered ; humbly beseeching him, as he esteemed the love of his Princely Father, and the honour and reputation of his Country, to acknowledge in some courteous manner the wrong committed and so reconcile himselfe.

Armatius whose passion had not yet left him, albeit in his health none might more perswade him then *Machaon*, yet hearing him preach repentance, being in this humour, forgot their passed friendship, and moved with his talke,
albeit

Albeit it was used for his good; with a
 look as gasty as a Ghost risen from
 the grave, drew neare *Machaon*, and
 laying hands on him, had like to have
 poyled him had he not made the more
 speed away.

Diphilus understanding what had
 bin offered the aged man, and hearing
 in what regard the Prince held his love,
 passing by his choller, began with great
 heaviness to lament the Prince his a-
 gonie, and sorrowing for him besought
 the heavens Creator so to comfort the
 Prince as himselfe would wish in the
 like extreame. And thus leaving *Ma-
 chaon* and the Nobles to their charge,
 departed.

The Nobles whose griefe was not
 little, having hearts over-charged with
 sorrow, thinking it not convenient to
 leave him alone, doubting some worse
 matter should happen unto him, went
 to visite the Prince cheerefully, enqui-
 ring of his welfare, which with so good
 countenances as he could use was kind-
 ly answered of the Prince; who having
 past the extremity of his fury, calling

to minde these notable abuses offered
his Friends, greatly lamenting his fol-
ly therein, he said.

CHAP. VI.

*How the Prince Armatius calling to
minde the wrong offered the Lord
Diphilus, sorrowed for it, accusing
himselfe of great ingratitude for the
same, in dishonouring his State and
Country. The Nobles are intreated
honourably, and with rich gifts de-
part, Armatius recovereth in short
time some strength, and doth aban-
don his sick lodging.*



Here, where my honou-
rable friends, may I hide
my head to shelter mee
from the worlds re-
proach, who voyd of all
reason, more brutish then the savage
beast, have sought to murder my de-
arest friends. Oh, how might I blush
with shame, and ashamed of my evill
com

committed, never behold the faces of
those whom I have so evill entreated :
what fury bewitched me to this mis-
chiefe? Or what divelish sorcery en-
chaunted my spirits, and captivated my
sences, so to offend thee Lord *Diphilus*?
Who of thy zealous affection and cur-
resie came to visite mee, delighting so
greatly in thy company as I did. And
thou the Father of gravity, my greatest
hope in the world, *Machaon* thou
whose honest care and love to me hath
beene ever showne from my Cradle.
Oh *Machaon*, how ungratefull have I
beene, rewarding thy good with the
hazard of thy blood. Woe is me un-
happie, and thrice unhappie, that I
have lived to behold the light of this
day, wherein past my selfe, I have so
highly offended. Pardon, pardon my
Lord *Diphilus* as thou art honourable,
and thou *Machaon*, whose aged yeares
I have so highly offended: Forgive my
amisse and remit that evill I have
committed against thee, or let me never
behold the dayes light againe. Why
should I live, when mine owne con-
science

science so highly accuseth of such impiety? Will not the Fowles of the ayre soaring over thy head as thou walkest try out (ungatefull *Armatius*) that wouldst have murdered thy friends? Each creature that God hath made, will exclaime against thee for this evill, following thee with cryes of horreur to thy everlasting reproach. Therefore unhappie *Armatius*, since by thy own doings this reproach is happened upon thee, whereby for ever thou art dishonoured and no man hereafter will dare to use any familiarity with thee, no not one, from the Prince to the Begger, (live not, live not thou *Armatius*) but let that hand that committed the evill, finish thy life, which living, can never be unremembred. In this fury resolving to have mischief feed himselfe, his Nobles taking him in their armes, with such comfortable speeches as they could, pacified him, who seeing his sorrowfulnesse, were partakers of his griefe, and much lamented his extremity, as men might for their Sovereigne. Yet casting off care, and seeking

Loves Heroick Champion. 49

seeking the best for their quiet they could, they laid him in his Bed, where with solemn musicke they procured him to sleepe. Where for a time I leave him.

Time that findeth all things, hath now wrought an end of the Kings affairs, for the dispatch of the Embassadors, whom the King hath great entertainment and Jewels of high estate, so rewarded, as they all had cause to speak of his royall bounty. The Embassadors receiving their Letters, and the time pointed for their departure, their ships with victuals at the Kings cost replenished, and all other necessaries, *Amphylus* who had beene often solicited *Marbrian*, to visit the Prince, and by report, whose word was of account with all that had knowledge of his people dealings, was perswaded of the uncelle sorrow, for the wrong offered him. Wherefore that it might appeare to *Armanus*, hee departed not in pleasure, but that he had forgotten wrongs offered, kindly before his departure, came to take his leave. Where on the courteous demeanour of the

D

Prince,

Prince, who manifested his grief by
the aboumdance of sighes, which he
powred forth, they were reconciled, and
an inuolable league of friendship vou-
ed betweene them: which with so-
lemne Oathes they protested, should
never quail in either of them.

The haste of the noble Embassadors,
who desired to be with their Loves
home, is more now then *Diphilus* is
sated: But what must be, shall be, he
looth soeuer. Wherefore, after some
friendly gratulations betweene them,
and great gifts of the Prince, on his
(*Amico*) bestowed, they take leave
of other. *Diphilus* solemnly prayes
for the Princesss health, and *Armenius*
wishing him all happinolle. These
things fitted by the Kings, comming
they were honourably conducted to
the Port, where their Ships ready fur-
shed, attended their comming: where
they had not long stayed, but
woud serve their turnes, God
them, and they imbarqued themselues
each one for his severall Country.
The Nobles returned to the Court

to their carefull regard of their King,
Countries benefit, we leave them, to let
you know further of the Prince, who
is troubled as you shall heare.

The Prince, whom Nature had formed
so exquisit in lineaments of body, as
could be required, having Wisedome
and valour inferiour to none, when hee
had considered with great Wisedome,
from point to point, the extremity of
his estate, and found that his Disease
was grievous, and so great, that he ra-
ther desired death then life, in that age
to be continued; weying all dan-
gers which might befall him, in seeking
secretly for such helpe, as by his owne
industry he could procure: with the
pleasures and hearts content, the obtai-
ning of his Loves delight, would bring
him; resolutely determined, as much as
he might, to cherish himselfe: and
disguising himselfe in habit of a Tra-
veller, unknowne of any man, so soon
as his strength would permit him, he
departed his Countrey towards Tre-
visand, and either gaine his Lady,

or try in short time the sicklenesse of
his Fortune : hazarding all on this
rest, he secretly procureth all his Jew-
els, and such Summes of money as he
could : and by little and little recove-
ring himselfe, used his wonted familiar-
ity amongst the Nobles, & Courtiers :
which did cause no small content and
hearts joy in the King, Queene, and
Commons; yea, such was the generall
rejoycing of the whole people in the
Realme, for his recovery, that there was
not one, which shewed not some sign
of gladnesse, by his outward appearance.

And thus he recovered his health, and
was able to goe abroad againe, and
to see the King, Queene, and
Commons, and to be with them
as before.



And thus he recovered his health, and
was able to goe abroad againe, and
to see the King, Queene, and
Commons, and to be with them
as before.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Now Armatus recovering health,
sought opportunity to leave the
Court, his Kingly Father and Mo-
ther, to see the Germanian Court
which suddenly he obtained; and
what happened him in his Journey.



So there is not the
clearest day which
is not overwhelmed
with some Clouds,
so lasted this joy
amongst these lo-
ving Subjects not long: for Armatus
continuing his determination, con-
veyed his treasures of money and Jew-
els into a Grove within the Parke
neare the Court, at such severall times
(onely to effect his pretended purpose)
as he would choose to be solitary,
wrought so close, and with such discre-
tion that he was altogether unpertur-
bed of any man.

Each thing wrought to his content, secretly in the evening, his companions by him appointed to keepe the Courtiers from idlenesse, by such pastimes as he had deuised, as Masking, Barriers, Dicing, and other recreations, whom he refused to accompany, alleaging that he might not be long absent from the King, and that his sport determined, was to recreate the Queene, who since her sicknesse was very melancholy, which coyned excuse passed for current, as what was it they would not credit which he should report.

Having thus politikely fitted all things, Supper ended, and every one attending the beginning of the sports and pastimes, *Armarins* who had more strings to his Harpe then one, had care but how to convey himselfe from their presence, which he took opportunity to do, telling the Queen Mother he had given his word to be one of the Maskers, which she being glad of, and joycing to remove his melancholy by any meanes, suffered him to depart.

But too soone alas, gave the creek to
his friends speeches, which turned them
all to great sorrow and heavinesse :
for *Armarins* minding left what
they supposed he most joyed in, con-
veyed himselfe with all the haste he pos-
sibly could into the Parke, where his
Footeman attended his coming with
his Horse, on which he was no sooner
mounted, to drive in suspicion or jealous
thoughts of his late travaile from his
man, he commanded him presently, to
speed him with all the haste he might,
unto the House of a Knight dwelling
not farre off, with a devised message,
pretending the businesse to be of great
waight and importance, and straightly
charging him not to depart from
thence before his coming, which
should be the next Night. With this
commandment the Servant departed,
last suspecting the losse of so bound-
full a Master was so neare. But the Prince
whose chiefest content was in behol-
ding the *Idea* of that Paragon whom
Faine had so extolled, had his heart
fired with desire, that he thought

every day a yeare, and every minute a
moneth, untill he beheld the excellencie
of Natures worke, the onely performed
worke of Beauty, and the Sovereaigne
Goddesse of his thoughts, of which
ARMATIUS having no small regard,
doubting to be missed of the King, and
loth to lose that opportunity, posteth
with all speed unto the Grove where
his Coyne and Jewels lay, where the
better to escape the suspicion of Offi-
cers in his passage, crossing the Seas, he
attired himselfe in the habit of a Mar-
chant, which he had ready provided for
that purpose: and so making small stay
he ceaseth not his couriers pace, nor
spareth any Horse flesh, untill he came
to the Port where he intended to im-
burke himselfe. No sooner arrived he
at that so long desired place, but For-
tune who had bent his thoughts to
travails, intending after her many
troubles to saunce his Sower with some
Sweets, and like a comfortable Physici-
an, after many bitter Pillas ministered
for cloying the stomacks of his Patients,
comforteth him with some conserve, or

other

other more pleasing his appetite, so the Prince now in the beginning of his Fortunes, found this favour, to come him with the better hope of ensuing good: for at his first coming to the City, after inquiry made for some ship bound for *Carmania*, her had intelligence of a Barke already haled out of the Harbrough into the Roade, her yards crossed, and her Marriners expecting the coming aboard of the Master and her Marchants, and so to depart. Which newes how pleasing it was to the Prince, suppose you Gentils, that have your hearts so full fraught with desire as this: Noble, *Armatius*, who no sooner was informed hereof, but diligently went himselfe to search the Master and Marchants of this ship, whom he found in an *Ostrin*, exhorting each to their good voyage, and taking leave of their friends in the City: to whose company the Prince being come, albeit nothing acquainted with the conditions of those people, yet he framed his behaviour to his habit, that it might have bene admired as

mongst the Courtiers, his quaint behaviour, had they been beholders thereof, pleasing so well these humorous companions with his carowling, courtesie, and bountifull expences, that nothing he could require was denied him. A wonder it were to tell you, when he required passage, with what willingness they granted it, and what large proffers were made him of their Cabbins, and other Sea courtesies: all which he accepted with such kindnesse, and none more welcome than *Amarino*; who standing on Thorpes to be cleere of his Land, whom Love enforceth without regard of Father, Crowne, or Subject, to leave, he hasteneth the rest aboard, of whose company the Marriners were not a little joyfull, for that the wind served them in such pleasing manner, to bring them to their desired Haven, whether (following the Masters direction for their course) Sailing with faire gale, we leave them for a time, to tell you of the griefe of *Charondas*, the *Carnian* King, for the losse of his Son, of whom no manner of newes might be heard.

You have heard Gentils, with what policy the Prince wrought, the better to bring his purposed intent to passe, and what severall pastimes were by him advised : in which severall action it was supposed by the Courtiers, himselfe would have beene a chiefe, or at least, a beholder of their sports. But he which had more Hammers working in his braine then one, taking that time as fittest for his opportunity, gave them a cause of great sorrow, as you shall heare. Whose sports ended, and every thing with great credit to the actors, and pleasure to the beholders finished, the King and Queene, whom Age now called to rest, after kind countenances, and many thankes to the Noble men and Gentiles, bad them good night, who were in all humblenetic and hearty love commended to their rest, where let them rest, untill the newes of their Sons departure be brought them, by the wofull *Machaon*, whose Hearts surcharged with Sorrow, could hardly be comforted, but that through the extremity of his griefe, he had resigned

his latest gaspe to him who first gave
him Breath.

CHAP. V.

*How the Prince Armatius departing
so suddenly from the Court, caused
the hairons and great sorrow of the
King and all his Subjects, which hee
bewayled in this wofull manner.*



His wofull newes was two
whole dayes and more
kept from the King, by
that Mirrour of fidelity
Machabon, who by all
meanes either Art or Travell could
imagine, enquired after the Prince, but
of him could heare no tydings, where-
by many supposed he was slaine: some
conjectured one thing, some another.
But most of all the King and Queene,
their heavynesse was such, as may not
without great effusion of teares be re-
membered, which caused a generall
griefe throughout the whole Regiment.

But

But neither sorrow of the Subjects, nor lamentation of their King, might recall him, whom they all so much desired to see, which caused the King overcharged with Melancholy, rather desiring Death then Life, breath out these Speeches.

Unhappy (*Gbaranda*) and more unhappy, in being Father to so gracelesse a Child (*on Armasins*) why have I lived to see thee growne a man: tenderly caring to bring thee to that estate; and now my chiefest hope was in thee to have comfort, thus by thy unkind demeanour, to cause my griefe: how happy be those Parents whose Children live in obedience; but thrice accursed those Fathers, which give the bridle of youth into their hands, who ought to be held in, as the Colt unbridled, with the hardest Bit. Though Wisdome presagerh Lawes of government to Fathers, and experience of the Ancient which have lived in elder times giveth advise, crying out of such as give liberty to Younglings, yet law of Nature, whereunto we unhappy

Parents

Parents are too much tyed, forgetting
all counsels, are to beleeved on those
carelesse Younglings, that if they desire
any thing, whether it be profitable for
their instruction, or haileth them to de-
struction, it may not be denyed them.
How many of high estate by the care-
lesse regard of their untoward children,
have been brought to great heavinesse.
Or who taking pleasure in his Off-
spring, can see him restrained (I but un-
happy man) hast thou not heard the
learned Surgion often tell his tender
Patient, that it is better to smart once,
then endure griefe for ever? And thou
that mightest have kept thy deare Son
under his Tutors custody, wherein he
lived in obedience, might so have had
him still, if thy owne foolishnesse had
not been so carelesse of him. Then since
thou hast been the cause of thine owne
fettow, blame thy selfe, & sigh to think
on thy follies: and as thou hast bin the
originall of this mischief, not onely
robbing thy country of a toward brach
to succour thee, but hast lost to thy selfe
the joy of a Father, in wanting thy Son,
thy

thy lifes sole happinesse: perswade thee,
that as many Countries have beene pun-
ished for the Princes offences, so this
Plague is laid upon thy Subjects for thy
misdeeds. Wherefore in sorrowing for thy
sinnes, and that God may shew his mer-
cy upon thy kind Country men, sorrow
for thy koppery, and abjuring thy selfe
from Kingdome, Wife, and Countrey,
betake thee to some unknowne place,
where thou mayest spend the remain-
der of thy overworne yeares, in contem-
plation of thy sinnes, so may that God
of all mercy, which never turneth his
Face from the penitent, receive
thee to his grace, and restore thy Sonne,
calling him from his youthfull desires,
to become a comfort unto those which
with many salt teares, and hearts full
gorged with sorrow, bewaile his ab-
sence. Thus powring forth his griefe
with sighes, and many brinish teares,
uttering his Sorrow, he resolved to
leave all his earthly possessions, and
altogether forsaking the company of
all mankind, live solitary in some un-
frequented place, unill it would
please

pleaseth God some tydings should be sent him of his Sonne, or else by Death call him to those joyes which never shall have end. Thus for this time he ended his sorrowfull Speech, uttered in great griefe of mind, whom carefull herto eipye time and opportunity fit for his departure, we leave for a time. And shall tell you further of the Prince Armatius, who long before this time is arrived in Trebisond.

CHAP. VI.

How Armatius Prince of Carmania, arrived at the Court of Trebisond, in Habit of a Marchant, employing his stocke in Marchandise. Suddenly after, the Emperours Sonne Ottoman Barbarossa, with a great force both by Land and Sea, commanded the Countrey of Trebisond, for that the Princesse Amoretta was denied him in Marriage, whereof he sought revenge.

The Prince whom desire led to gain the love of Amoretta, nor otherwise

wife knowne but for a Marchant, landed now in safety, after a friendly welcome given to his fellow passengers, the Master and Owners, with bountifull rewards bestowed on the Marriners, was lodged by the Master in a Marchants house of great reputation, where unknowne to be any other then he seemed, hee imployed his stocke by Brokers, to great benefit, which bonarifully he spent, whereby he gained the love of all men that ever had any acquaintance with him, so that in short time his fame was so bruted throughout the City, that none of any account, but tooke great pleasure in his company, and joyed to recount his many verities. This amorous Prince whose heart was on his halfe penny, loth to acquaint any man with his secret love to the Princeesse, doubting some further perill to his person, then he was willing to hazard, would oftentimes intrude himselfe into the company of young Courtiers, amongst whom he so demeaned himselfe, and so courtely in all things, that all men might judge from what tree

tree such branches sprung. By this often frequenting of the Court, in the company of those to whom he was most welcome, he attained the sight of his Lady, whose beauty when he had seene, so amazed him, that if he were before passionate, he was now more perplexed, judging her excellent perfection to be without compare, yet not knowing how to make knowne his love unto her, smothering in silence his affection he daily desired some occasion might be offered, wherein for her safety, and honour of his beloved, he might shew some act worthy of honour, and to deserve her liking, which by Hortones assistance thus happily came to passe.

Ottoman Barbarossa, youngest Son to *Achmet Barbarossa*, Emperour of *Constantinople*, burning in love of this Princessse, only by the rare report of her singular perfections, had by Embassadors from his Father, craved the Princessse in marriage, who disdainig his love being a Pagan, although honourable, might not be won by any industry to fancy him, how great soever

his

his offers and protestations of love were; which refusall, the Prince brooked so ill, being of such might, that determining to gaine her by force for his concubine, which in friendship he had so often required to marry, he leavied a power of one hundred thousand, both on horse and foote, and shipping them in warlike manner, in Gallies, Frigates, Foystes, and Brigandioes, he arrived by the hard labour and painfull bowging of his slaves, before the City of *Fraxinopolis*, where *Castalinus* kept his Court, landing the greatest part of his men and Horse suddenly, and beleaguered the same both by Land and Sea : unto which he gave many fierce and hot assaults, and were as valiantly resisted, by the courage of those gallant Citizens, who fighting in right of their Countrey, feared not the hugeness of their Armies, nor their force of shipping, yet as the extreames of foraine Force cause many troubles, so did the Army of *Ottoman* drive these brave Thracians to many wants, whose courage through the lacke of victuals began to quail : that having no means

of reliefe neither by Sea nor Land, loth to famish, came daily to the Court, humbly beseeching the King to take pittie of them, and not wih famine to suffer them dye. But considering that the Princessse was the marke wherent he aymed, would rather deliver her, who should be honourably entreated, then suffer so many thousands to perish.

Castalinus vexed in mind, was driven to a *non plus*, so diversly perplexed, hee could not suddenly answer, his Child who was his onely comfort and Heire, either to be delivered him, whose name was odious unto him, or his Subjects who loved him no lesse then their own Soules, must perish in this extreame. Thus dountfull what to answer, hee crayed respite for two dayes, which they willingly yeelded unto, albeit their want of victuals was so great they might hardly endure.

The report of this dolefull sute of the Commons comming to the eares of *Armatius*, who with his attire, wee change to *Marianus*, who was now little moved there, and the greater was

his

his heaviness, by how much the more
his love was increased towards the
Princess, for whose reliefe he sought
many devises, atsoones determining
one thing, then another presents it selfe,
which seemeth better : at length re-
solving, lest delays should breed dan-
ger, he determined in that action which
was so honourable, to shew himselfe,
and eyther by his prowess free the
King and his beloved from the tyran-
ny of the vsurping Infidell, or yeeld
his latest gaspe in their defence.

CHAP. VII.

How Armatius naming himselfe Marianus, desirous to shew his force in defence of his Lady and Love the Princesse, gallantly offered his service to the King of Trebifond, and what happened him.



IN this resolution, he came to the Kings presence, unto whom doing his humble duty, and prostrating himselfe, he saith.

Most gracious Sovereigne, and liege Lord, pardon the bold attempt of a rude stranger,, whom dutifull zeale hath bound to your service, and of your gracious favour to all men, vouchsafe me that honour in this extreame, wherein your worthy Citizens stand, distressed by this faithlesse Infidell, who doth seeke your subversion, and their utter ruine and decay: whose presumption, if it please your Excellence to give me leave, shall by me, and such as I can by

love

love and money draw unto me, be chastened, and made to know, your Highnesse can expell at your pleasure, the power of a more strong and mighty Enemy, who though you have of courtesie suffered, it hath not beene of cowardize as he shall well understand. In this request, most gracious and renowned Sovereaigne, if it shall please you to honour me, I doubt not (by the ayde of the Highest) of a happy victory.

The King, which during his long reule, had earnestly noted his countenance, and his grace, in uttering the same, assured himselfe, that the honour of his house, which shewed in his courage, or the power of the eternall Deity wrought this motion in him, and therefore without any longer pause, taking him courteously from his knees, determining to try the Fortunes of this supposed Marchant, he saith:

What ever thou be that honour yrgeth to this attempt, thanks for thy love, wishing my good, and forwardnesse in venturing thy life, yet before

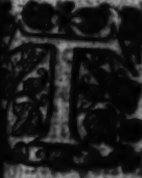
I accept thee for my Champion, (say Gentle Friend) of what Countrey art thou: what name and Parentage; to the end that I may give thee honour as thy deserts and blood doe require: and answering mee truly to these demands, tell mee what moved thee likewise, being so brave a man, and in thy flourishing estate, to hazard thy selfe in an action, wherein so many men of honour and great valour have lost their lives.

Know renowned Lord (quoth the Prince) *Carmania* is my Country, my Father a Gentleman, professing martiall Discipline, my name *Marianus*, the youngest of many of my Fathers Sons, unto whom my Minority denyed such revenues and livings as might sufficiently maintaine my estate, which caused me to employ my stocke in Trade of Marchandise, by which in time of peace I gained in your Countrey wealth sufficient, which with my body I offer in your Highnesse service, and doubt not but to free thy Princely Daughter from this Usurper, whose
 vertue

verue the world so much renowned
for by that Faith which I received at
the Font-stone, so long as I may breathe
life, never shall unhallowed Curres
triumph in your Graces overthrow,
nor in her dishonour.

CHAP. VIII.

How King Castalinus graciously ac-
cepted the proffered service of the
Prince Armatius, & how under the
Name of Mirianus a Merchant, and
how by the Princesse Amoretta, he
was invested with the Order of
Knight-hood, by the name of Loves
Heroicke Champion.

 He King over-joyed at
these francke Offers of
his Champio, expressing
by his outward signes,
the inward delight of
his heart, and the desire he had to
accept this younglings offer, taking great
asure in his countenance, which

was lovely, and nothing inferiour to the best in his Court, for Person, Wil- dome, or other Graces, which with ad- vise considered, he saith :

Heroicke Champion, well dost thou know thy selfe a Gentleman, for under the habit of a Marchant, Gentility can- not be hid, no poore estate can banish the Noble, nor aduerse Fortune what- soever ; but as Gold is soone brought from the baser Metals to his forme by the skillfull Finer : so are the Noble knowne by their vertues.

Heroicke Champion, I have cause to honor thee for thy love & forwardness is all for thy Countrey ; which (with- out flattering thee, or any there ab- siding) I love for your Kings sake. But our matter, thou seest (my deare *Cham- pion*) the millions of rages heaped upon my gray head, through the oppression of this *Heaven* Prince, whereby I am made more miserable then the meanest Subject within my dominions, and more than my misery, by recounting the wretched estate of my loving Subject whom I hold as deare as my life, & who

that by resigning my life and Crown, I might free them from bondage; were it nothing else the Tyrant required. But, toward Gentleman, whose love (wretch that I am) I cannot requite, my daughter & Oorrow worse then death to recount) *Amorella*, the only Solace of my life, and lifes sole good, in whose weale consisteth my good, and by violence offered her, what good can betide me? She, she, my deare *Champion*, it is, that trencheth my Soule into so deep a hell, that almost forgetting my selfe living, I daily die; only recounting the miseries she should endure, if ϕ Tyrant triumph in our overthrow: but he ϕ in extreame tendeth comfort hath revived me & relieved my overcharged hart by thy kind offer; whose courage, and hope of victory being such, as thou wilt hazard thy dearest blood for my daughters freedom, thanks (my good *Champion*) is all pleasure yet yeeld thee; yet to adde more courage to thy noble mind, fighting for us & our honor, my daugh. for whose good thou adventest, shall invest thee with order of knight-hood, & honour & ever

she gave to man of Arms, and shall pray
 for thy good successe: so calling for
 the Princesse, who was so discontented,
 that nothing could be pleasing unto
 her, who being come before him, after
 her humble duty done, desirous to know
 her Kingly Fathers will, he recounted
 the zeale of the Marchant unto her, who
 had not onely offered his goods, but all
 his proper life, to try in battell his For-
 tunes against their Enemy: wherefore
Amoretta (quoth the King) for that he
 hath so voluntarily offered the same
 for thy sake, and I relying on my
 God, and in his prowesse, have accepted
 him for my Champion, by thy hand
 he shall receive the honour of Knight-
 hood, his Title, *Loves Heroick Cham-
 pion*: and so prosper he in his hono-
 rable action, and in all others as we will
 and himselfe desireth.

The Princesse, which divers times
 had noted the Courty behaviour of
Armarins was not a little pleased at his
 Fathers Motion: as one that in hart
 good will, wished him better than
 he would suffer her to utter

harkening to her Fathers Speeches she beheld him with more gracious countenance, and viewing the Lineaments of his person, each grace well regarded, she inwardly bewayled his hard happe, that the Gods had framed him of no better reputation then a Marchant, who might well deserve the Title of a King, put from her *Memento*, by recounting her Fathers words, pausing thereon sometime; with a modest blushing countenance, she said.

Kind Sir, whole honourable Service offered for my Fathers good, and all our weales, his Subjects; if I yeeld you not such recompence as your deserts do merite, blame me not of discourteie; which have no better knowledge of you, but accept the hearty thanks of a Virgin, unto whom I hold my selfe so farre indebted, as I can no other way recompence, then wishing your good, yet in earnest of better good, refuse not of my hands to receive the honour of knighthood, seeing my Lords pleasure is such; and drawing his Rapier, the Prince kneeling, she invested him with

the order, by Name of the *Heroick Champion*, and pulling a jewell of rich price from her gowne, she tyed the same in a most beautifull Scarffe, beseeching him to weare it for her sake, wishing all happy Fortune to his attempts.

The new adopted Knight, whose heart over-joyed for so great a favour received from the Saint his heart wholly honoured, with many thanks dutifully rendered, kissed the Princesse hand, vowing himselfe her humble Servant, and in all places to maintain her modest beauty and princely honour, with his dearest blood.

The time thus passed, word was brought the King, that Digner was ready, whereby they were interrupted whom for a while we leave to their repast, discoursing diversly at table, of the valour of the *Heroick Champion*, whose towardnesse the King admired, which made his hopes the greater, not doubting but his Champion would prove no lesse valiant in Armes then they expected. At which the Princesse glori-
not a little, and the Nobles pleased

both

both their comforts, passed the time with more content, then many daies before, whom we leave to their mirth, and the *Heroick Champion*, to the ordering of his affaires.

CHAP. X. *How the Carmanian King, after he had spent some time in sorrow for the Princes departure, visited himselfe from the Court, Pilgrim-like attired, in search of his Sonne.*

How the Carmanian King, after he had spent some time in sorrow for the Princes departure, visited himselfe from the Court, Pilgrim-like attired, in search of his Sonne.

He came to King, and his wife, and her Sonne dyed.

HHE *Carmanian King*, after he had spent some time in sorrow for the Princes departure, visited himselfe from the Court, in habit of a Pilgrime, travelled many uncouth places in search for his Sonne, of whom he could hear no tyding, neither could he find out for all the industry he could use, attaine to any knowledge of him, his Heart so much desired: through which

the heaviness both of the Peeres and Commons, were daily Increased. And no marvell, when their Sovereigne the Mirrour of all Princely courtesie, had thus unknowne, in the declining of his Age, when his Yeares required rest, banished himselfe his Countrey, loving Subjects, and what else he enjoyed: the griefe of which so oppressed the Heart of the Queene, that nothing might yeeld her any comfort. But pining in continuall sorrow, utterly abandoning the Worlds comfort, to seeke
her comforter, whose dwellings are in the highest Heavens, she yielded her due to Death, whose Funerals, with the effusion of many brinish teares of the Nobles, and sorrowfull lamentations of her Subjects, was performed with such honour as to her estate required: whose obsequies finished, *Macheen* regarding the benefit of the Common weale, and the Princes good, of whom their hope was to learne knowledge, used so kind persuasions to the whole estate, in a Parliament holden of purpose, that the Regiment was delivered by consent,
unto

unto sixe of the chiefe Nobles, who
were solemnly sworne to maintaine
the dignities of the Crowne, in absence
of the King and his Sonne unto whom
being lawfull Heires to the same, they
should resign their Titles, whensoever
they should challenge the same. Now
Gentiles leave we these distressed peo-
ple, lamenting their Kings absence and
the Queenes Death to tell you of
Loves Heroske Champion.

CHAP. IX.

*How the Knight Mariannus, having
mustered his companies, made suite to
the Princessse, that she with the King
might be pleased to take view of
them, and of their gracions ac-
ceptance of his forwardnesse. Honour-
able favours shee vnto him. And
how a Herault, from the Camp of
Ottoman, arrived at the Court.*

THis gallant Prince, the hope of
Trebisond, careful of his Honour,
E S. and

It not unmindfull of his new Mistrie,
 whose Love was the marke he aimed at
 hoping by accomplishing this victory
 against the *Soldans* to gaine that place
 of reputation with her that he desired
 for the better accomplishing of which
 he proclaimed by Sound of Trumpet,
 that all such as would in that action
 adventure their lives with him, should
 bountifully be considered. All estates
 from the *Cavaliers* to the *Mercery*,
 caused many to offer him their Sonnes,
 so that in short time he had gathered
 more able men then ever in so small
 warning were seen. Such was the
 love that his bounry had gamed among
 all estates, that of their kindnesse many
 repayed more then for money, although
 the thought thereof is able to draw the
 Coward to fight, so highly was this
 stranger honored. The diligence was
 such of this Prince, that in short time
 he had his Companions, which were
 so furnished, as he lived not in those
 Territories that ever saw the like.

All things furnished for the field, he
 became an earnest Sutor to the Prin-

cesse his Mistress, to procure the King
to view his Army, which with great
suite she obtained for him, gracing him
with all the favours she might, more
delighting in him then in all the men
that ever she saw.

The time appointed for his Muster,
after he had given directions to all such
Leaders and other Officers, what course
to take with their severall charge, they
were conducted to the place appointed
by himselfe, who mounted on a stately
Courser, passed on through the City,
his Captaines attired in Gascon coats
of watched Velvet, having on the breast
and backe embossed with Goldsmiths
worke, a Mayden head, according to his
devise on his Armes, with the colour
of his Mistresses Scarffe, every under
Officer in like Suites of Satten, his
Mercenary men in Jackets, Hose and
Hats coloured alike, which caused
the beholders, to admire the stranger
more then their Prince.

When

When the King beheld this Mirrour
of honour, left thinking he was Sonne
to his loving Friend the *Carnanian*
King, and had with great delight view-
ed each severall Officer & their charge,
with their order of March, and ranging
in Battell, all accomplished in such
Warlike manner, as seldome he had
seene: and withall noted his person,
with his bravery in Armour, in gallant
sitting a Horse, and managing the same,
his charging, running, and other signs
of ensuing good, giving him great
thanks, he caused him to dismisle his
companies for that time, to attend his
pleasure at the Court, which he caused
suddenly to be done, attending the
Kings pleasure at the Court, as he was
commanded: the newes of his arrivall
being brought to the Princess, who
had but scene with what cost and care
devises, each thing by her Servant was
performed, judging likewise that his
love to her was some cause, by his con-
siders and devises, willing to know how
graciously the same was accepted, he
came into the Presence: where finding

her Knight, after she had with a kind & loving Congee saluted him, calling him to a Baye Window, with a modest and comely grace, she said.

Sir, how much I find my self indebted unto you, for your proffered Service and forwardnesse, in performing the same, I will not say, that in time what wants in me to accomplish my Kingly Father I will recompence, who hath seen and well noted your diligence used for his safety, with your great cost and charge, which he will not forget. In the meane time (good Servant) for so I will henceforth call you, so you will vouchsafe to accept of my Tide: I will pray for your good successe and happy victory, whereby your Renowne may passe the furthest parts of the Earth, and our Countrey by your prowesse delivered from Heathen thralldome.

Virtuous Princess (answered *Louis Herick Champion*) might it please your Excellence to conceive of my well meaning, as my desire is to deserve, my Fortune might be com-
p

with the happiest that livereth. For on
the Faith of a Souldier, and by the Ma-
jesty of that Saint my heart most ado-
reth, there is none breathing life under
the celestiell Globe, that shall command
the simple Service of *Marianns*, but
your Majesty, bound thereunto by your
Princely favours. Enough my good
Servant (quoth the Princesse) I take
your word, having great cause to be-
lieve you seeing your forwardnesse. But
good Servant, if I might under *Benedic-
tury*, know the Saint unto whom your
devotions are bent, I would be so bold
to offer a Virgins prayer at her Shrine
for your good successe. The King over-
hearing their talke brake them off
thus.

How now Madame, what have you
that Gentleman at larish (it so) and that
his confession deserve a sharp penance
yet be good to him, he may in time re-
mend.

Your Grace (quoth the Princesse) I
take your selfe, your Highnesse know-
ing I never tooke orders, therefore my
penance is not to absolve

illy presumption. I offend therefore. I
doubt the Fathers of our Church would
reward me therewith. But to let your
Majesty know the truth, perceiving the
desire he hath to do you Service, I was
bold to give him thanks in such re-
compence, I leave to your Excellency
who at your pleasure may better reward
him. Then last well said (Daughter, quoth
the King) in putting me in mind what I
should doe, lest forgetting my honour
to such as well deserve. I be reckoned
amongst the number of those Princes,
who with faire words and kind looker
feed their Subjects, so long as they have
either Patrimony or other to doe them
Service, to the utter overthrow of their
posterity, for ever, and they so farre
indebt, as they dare not shew their heads,
then shall they get (perhaps) some Sum
worth a hundred pounds a yeare, that
have consumed many thousand, main-
taining a brave Port, for his Prin-
ces Honour. What said I? a hun-
dred pound a Yeare, I say, not more
without the favour of such as the

cheapest in authority, and use near the
 Prince, whose good will, if they can
 procure (it may be) they shall obtaine
 some small thing. Scarce able to main-
 taine the Port of a good Yeoman: for
 I tell thee, such must be pleased, or
 else let the Princes mind be forward to
 reward them; and by their bounty re-
 lieve their wants, their good Natures
 by perswasion of such as thinke all
 too much which goeth from them-
 selves, and such as they please to bestow
 it upon, shall be abused. This have I
 heard Gentle Knight, and grieve, this
 Honour should so unkindly be rewar-
 ded, so that any Subject should forget
 his duty so much, as for his owne
 love, cause those that spend their blood
 in their Countreys defence, their Land
 and possessions, with empty purses, and
 bare hearts, like men forlornes to
 walke the streets exclaiming on them
 that should for their Service better re-
 warded, as the dishonour of the state
 they live in. *Thierry Herwick* Chan-
 celer, when recolling, left in forgetting
 and did so in my by committing the
 like.

like; but he that gave me reason to know good, and to follow it, will never suffer me to fall into so great folly, nor let me live so forget those maimed brave men, that venture for my good and my Countries weale: for while I may breath, the Souldier shall be honoured in *Troisend*, and shall reape the reward of his merits, neither shall these Drowns which in such times of perills hide their heads, sucke the hony off my Garland. Like minds I with all Princes, wish carefull eyes to look into the doings of such, who as the Moath devourth the fine cloath, consume their Prince-
 y reputations, and drawe the Com-
 mons, who by duty are bound to love, from their Allegiance. Whilest the King was in this Speech, word was brought him, that a Herald from the Campe attended his pleasure at the Gate, requiring parly, which he suddenly granced, commanding him to be brought to his presence: this unhallow-
 ed Pagan who never feared God, nor was endued with any humanity, came unto the Kings presence, with a shawe-

lesse countenance, used this peremptory
Speech.

CHAP. XI.

How the Embassadour from the Turke
delivering a very peremptory mes-
sage from his Lord in disgrace of the
Trebisond King, and dishonour
his Princely Daughter, the Heroick
Champion, at his great suite, obtain-
eth the Kings favour to issue forth
upon them: his honourable exhorta-
tion and speeches to his Companions
with their forwardness.

THE King of Trebisond, Ottoman
Barbarossa, great Com-
mander of the Empire,
and Generall of those
royall Armies, sendeth thee by me, the
choyce, either of warre or peace (peace
is thou deliver thy Daughter unto him,
whom he hath so often requir'd, yet
whereas his love unto her hath bene
such to make her his wife, his noble
mind despiseth her so much, as his
high

highnesse will never so much honour
her, but in despite of thee, and to abate
the pride of that disdainfull Dame, he
will use her as his Concubine, and when
he shall have taken the flower of her
Virginity, give her to the basest villain
in his Campe. Thou knowest my Em-
bassage: deliver her and live, or by no
returne thy resolute answer, for it shall
not be many dayes, ere thy City shall
flame with fire about thine Eares.

The King vexed at this unexpected
Message, could not answer him: some-
times was his Choller, yet with as much
patience as nature would permit, he
said: Pagan, I have heard, and with
painne endured thy Lords peremptory
Message: and that thou, and the Cur
from whom thou comest, shall well
know the great difference betwixt a
Christian and him, and that he under-
stand how honourable we hold the law
of Armes. I pardon thee thy life, which
thy presumption doth require, sharply
to be punished. For answer to thy Lord
this briefly say: I will threat: I regard

not for my Daughter, as God hath
given her me, and for she is the onely
joy of my aged life, I will shield her, and
in despite of the Pagan, and his greatest
power defend her chastity: therefore
depart, and say to thy Lord from me,
his threats I wey no more then the
words of a child: it is not his multitudes
can daunt me, were they ten times more
then they are, my Daughter I will hold
in despite of his beard, proud Urturper
that he is. Thou knowest my will, make
no stay.

The Herald noting the stern coun-
tenance of the King, and hearing his
resolution, thought it not good to stay
any longer, but ~~his~~ swallowing in his
throat, might not be called without
loss of his head, but glad to escape his
fury, conveyed him from his presence,
with all speed he could, posting to the
Prison of the Prince, unto whom he
delivered the Kings resolute answer,
which he no sooner heard, but like one
besides himselfe, he vowed in three
dayes to be revenged of the old churle,
who should taste the bitterness of his
youth.

youthfull fury: Little knoweth this
proud Enemy, the preparation made, to
bid him welcome, or that his owne de-
struction was so neare as after it pro-
ved. The *Hericke Champion*, which
with no small griefe had endured this
proud demand of the Herald, whose
whole request was for dishonour of her,
he so much honoured, awaked from
Melancholy, and out of a sound sleep,
protesting himselfe before the King, be-
saith. Renowned Sovereaigne, with what
griefe I have endured the presumption
of this Usurper, my heart denieth my
tongue to utter, neither shall I have joy
of any thing, till I revenge the wrongs
offered your Majesty and your Princely
Daughter, upon that Dogge. Wherefore
dread Lord, grant me Licence to issue
out of the City with my Companions,
in the silence of the Night, and I hope
ere long to returne his proud challenge,
with my Sword in his Throat. Thanks
good Knight, quoth the King. I accept
thy offer as much, as if thou hadst ge-
ven me the whole World in possession,
yet would I not so forward a man
should

disband adventure himselfe without my company, whole cause it is, my selfe will accompany thee in the fight, and by my Herald bid him battell, in which I doubt not of successe.

The Knight was much moved, to heare his sure take no better successe, yet not willing to endure any competitor in the Honour he hoped of, humbly besought his Majesty of the honour he bare to Armes, in this attempt to give him leave, and the rather for the Reputation of the Princeesse, which had given him his first honour.

The King which saw by his countenance how full content, he rested at this deniall, how loth soever he were to grant the same, yet yielded to his desire, and taking him from his knee, lovingly embracing him, he said, Brave man at Armes, take not in ill part, that I have denyed, neither thinke that it was in any sort to disparage you, or the hope I have of your forwardnes, due for maintaining my owne honour, yet seeing your will is to adventure for me, go in Gods name, and let be your de-

defence, that ever comforted his distressed: and so pulling his Signet from his finger, he gave it him, willing that it be delivered to the Governour of the City, and let him understand his Highnesse pleasure was, that (he with his Army) passe at his pleasure - and so taking his humble leave of the King, and his gracious Mistresse, which affecteth him more then he could conceive, he departeth more joyfull of this honour, then to be richly endowed.

No sooner parted he the Kings presence, but slackning a little time as was possible, he summoned his Captains, and Officers, straightly charging them with all diligence they could use, to gather their Companies, and to attend him in the Market place, in which charge no negligence was used, so that by lining in of the Evening, each Captaine with his charge, both Horse and foote, attending the comming of their Generall, who was not unmingled of his beuoesse, &c after thanks given to their Leaders, he marched wth them to a place that led the to the Camp of the Soldan,

and

and was upon sight of the Kings Signer let out. Thus marched the Noble Prince, untill he came halfe way, betweene the Campe and the City, where he called his principall men together, and said :

Friends and Copartners in Armes, you are now to consider what we have taken in hand. For that on our weale dependeth the whole estate of this Common weale; if we prevaile, what good it is to be freed from such an enemy, there is not the simplest but can conceiue, having tasted the extremity which is incident to Warres, and the pleasure of peace. Contrary, the slavery and servile liues which these are compelled to endure that fall into their hands, you may imagine, by the opprobrious usage of your gracious Prince, and example of other Christians, which have fallen into their hands. Wherefore now is the time to shew your selyas in this battell, if you shew your Force, no doubt of happy successe, to your Eternall commendations, and to the benefit of your COUNTRY, and freedome of
your

your Wives, Children, and Families
With them, and other such people
to inspire the hearts of his soldiers
as they vowed to follow him with
the hazard of their dearest blood.

His army was now gathered together
and he began to speak to them
in this manner.

Chap. 4. 2. 11

How Manus was surprised with a great
don't Trooper, assisted the Duke in
his Camp, and how he was
made a most brave knight.

When the Knight saw the
willingness of his men,
and that their resolution
by outward motions
was as he expected,
he had given them many thanks
made choise of five hundred to
be his company. And after he had
given directions for the Army to follow
him, he with his elected Company
marched on as closely as they might,
defeating of the Enemy who kept



Then the Knight saw the
willingness of his men,
and that their resolution
by outward motions
was as he expected,
he had given them many thanks
made choise of five hundred to
be his company. And after he had
given directions for the Army to follow
him, he with his elected Company
marched on as closely as they might,
defeating of the Enemy who kept

a Court of Card not farre from hence
upon whom in the dead of the night
they entred, and finding them at the
advantage & who little doubted any
assault, having never before bene assailed
(some sleeping, some gaming, and
others still employed, — they surprized
them, and left not one to beare tyding
of their ill Fortune. This first attempt
well performed, he passed on with all
speed to the Campe, where the Prince
lay, suddenly entred the same, where
like a resolute and Noble Gentleman
he so behaved himselfe, that it filled the
hearts of his followers with great courage
who behaved themselves in such
manner that few escaped with life, but
such as were grievously wounded, and
some rather desired death, than to
live. The Prince who was by one
his *Chambers* counsellled to flye, but
least evill, for avoiding of death, he
bravely mounted on a swift Pegasus
Gentle, of which the *Prince* being
being informed, leaving the first
pursued after with so good speed, that he
harmlesse flate, from the cruel jaws

the Greyhounds, such haste made this worthy Conquerour; that in evill time for the Prince, he overtook him, accompanied with 12. of his principall *Bashawes*, whom he with courage so assailed, that in a moment he had vanquished them all, leaving some breathlesse, some without armes, others without legges, no one escaped his fury. In which conflict the Prince escaped, but all in vaine, the Destinies had determined there to finish the honour of that journey, by the hands of the *Heroicke Champion*.

Who overtaking him, gave him so grievous a blow with his *Curtelex* betwene the necke and shoulders, as made him forget his way, saying: Stay proud Vnrepent, and take my Lady the Princesse with thee, and pulled him violently, with all the force he could by the Helm: unhorsed him, that the Knight verily supposed he had beene slain: wherefore dismounting himselfe, he revived him againe, unto whom he said. My Lord, this is not for your Honour

to brave a King in his own Dominions
and in his Court by your Herald, and
then to have so small a care of your
word. In Faith Pagan (for thy sake) I'll
never credit any *Hearthen* on his word
hereafter. Pity is it a Prince of your
esteeme should after so many Lectures
read, play the Treuant (trust me) were
your Father, I should twigge the Youth
well to learne him hereafter to be more
carefull of his businelle. The Prince
haring himselfe so trumped, was more
grieved thereat, then of all the losse he
had received. Wherefore with a heart
full of carefull heavynesse, he saith:

Brave man at Arins, what ere thou
be, to whom Fortune hath made me
thrall, ill becometh such words of dis-
grace to any one whom the Fates have
overthrowne, but, curst be my selfe,
which gave thee this opportunity, curst
that negligence, which maketh my
Foe thus to triumph in my fall. Thou
Atchomer, suffer me not as thou art a
Prophet, to live thus disgraced, to be-
hold the Face of any man, surprized by
so cowardly a Curte, who daring doe

to thrust his head out of the kennell but by stealth, hath wrought my utter ruine and overthrow, taking his advantage. But glory not in this victory, for it may be, thou shalt have so great cause to repent thee thereof, as pleasure to behold me now thy Prisoner.

Your Lordship is disposed to be pleasant to the Knight, but it is the vie of *Christians* to give losers leave to speake. If it so happen, my Fortune shall be the worse: In the meane time your Grace shall be my guest. I have an Host provided, will bid you welcome, who by this time, I doubt not, doth heare of your coming, that you need not feare of your Dinner.

The Primer full of heavynesse, could not tell what to answer, wherefore assuming himselfe with all the patience he could to endure it, he was by the Conquerer, commanded to home.

Long had they not hidden rewards his Army, but he was encouraged by desert of his Captaines, who making their General at hazard, put themselves in search for him, and happily

well they met him, who rejoycing at his good Fortune, taking the Prince prisoner, they recount unto him the ruine and Spoile of the whole Army: for which their diligent courage and valour shewed, he yeeldeth them most great and hearty thanks, beseeching them to take charge of his Army, and divide the Spoyle amongst them: which done, repaire at their pleasures to the City, whilst he with his Prisoner made halt to the Kings presence.

The tidings of the Knights successe, was by some (such as honoured him) with speed reported at the Court, in which no part of his honour was left unrecounted, whose policy and valiantnelle in Armes, the King with all the Courtiers admired: Imagining him by these worthy deeds of Chivalry, to be the onely man at Armes, deserving honour in all that Region: of whom there was no small joy, and such Fame and renowne of his actions, as both in City and Court there was no talk, but concluded the honour of the *Heroicke Champion*, which liked not the Princesse

Amoretti a little, to heare her Servant
in these his first attempts, venturing for
her (to have such Fortunes successe) so
that where she had begun to like him
before (Cervantes) that she made her
mightiest, began most industriously for
to allure her; so that her tender heart was
quitted therewith, and was enforced to
yield herself a slave unto his. Deny
and giving over other Courtlike de-
lights, bend her whole study in seeking
which way to winne her heart betwix
to her liking, for the accomplishing of
which many wayes were devised and
plotted, but none thereof was so
that resting in a labyrinth of confused
thoughts, commanding her attendants
from her, she said:

And of no more education than a
chance, a little Trade, and most trivial
learned I have heard many Noples
call, whether they choose to
call it so, or not.

meaner, writing such young
as were ord to have to doe with them
in some ancient Patternes, making
of Noples and Gentles of great

CHAP. XII.

The Princess Amoretta, who is seen
with her Champion Marius, be-
ing present at the Court in great honour
of preserving with our King, the Prince
with his daughter, it with their plea-
sant Discourses at their meetings,
and honours done to their Heroick
Champion.



Amoretta, that wretched
liveth, enjoyeth not
more sweet content than
thy self, who yet long'st to
follow a follie, of thy
youthfull mind, has planted thy Love
thou knowest not on whom a stranger,
and of no more Reputation then a Mar-
chant, a base Trade, and most fraudu-
lent, as I have heard many Nobles dis-
cuss, whereby they obtaine in great
riches, and by their artfull meanes,
wing such young Gentlemen
are forced to have to doe with them,
from their ancient Patrimonies, making
of Noblemen and Gentles of

worship, Beggars, and their owne base
borne Brats, to become young Masters,
which in time, and small time, con-
sume that in Ryot, which their misfe-
rable Fathers by extortion, false recko-
nings, insatiable Hurry, and other loose
dealings, sold their Soules, the precious
Image of our Saviour to the Devell. But
wretched wretch, whither wandrest
thou? these be no points for thee to
stand upon, thou hast now vied the
Game, and are bound by such a Band, as
there is no remedy but see it thou must:
therefore leave to discourse what he was,
or hath beene. Thou hearest by generall
report of all men, he is honourable, in
Wars valiant, bountifull, and endewed
with all manner of Gentleman-like con-
ditions, which arguerh him descended of
better Parentage, then he will acknow-
ledge. And therefore cease not to love
him, who by all conjectures, if outward
shewes proceed of the nature of the
Heart, regardeth thy Honour, thou
quite his Service, *Amorosa*, and seekes
time to quench that flame, which be-
ginnaeth but yet is warm, lest it should

by little and little, it consumeth thee.
 In extreames the Noble mind is best
 known, happy are they accounted, which
 forewarned can eschew a mischiefe; If
 thou canst win thy Love, what creature
 may be compared with thee for happy
 consens? Be resolute *Amoretti*, feare no
 colours, thy love is planted on such a
 one, who for his vertues may be mated
 with the greatest Princesse on the earth
 then stand not on termes of his being,
 but determine to love him, faint hearted
 Souldier never gained conquest, if he be
 base thou maist advance him. Thou art
 Heire to the Crowne of *Trebisond*, and
 thy Fathers Sole delight, who then
 should gainsay thy will herein (Fathers
 Sole delight said) yea there *Amoretti*,
 lyeth a blocke which thou canst hardly
 remove. Thy Father, what will he aged
 King say? when shall he heare of thy
 love so basely planted, which hast refused
 to be Wife to two famous Kings,
 requiring thee with great Sure in mar-
 riage. Reiraine Fondling from this rash
 determination, let thy Fathers love be a
 Raine to hold thy unbridled will, feare

his discomfite when hee cheereless
 seake not by thy folly to bring his head
 with sorrow to his grave, which if thou
 persist will be quite & contrarye
 and such a shame to him as no
 memory of *Amor* will
 will never be raised oute with chere and
 such like motions of good, the thought
 to withdraw her love from him, that for
 birth and other noble actions deserved
 her better, albeit unknowne to her: but
 what ever he be, the more she sought to
 suppress the flame of her love, the
 more it encreased: that without regard
 of Fate is good, or her own honour, she
 determined to love him: yea the *Hero-
 like Champion* with his Prize, was arri-
 ved at the Court, whom the King and
 Nobles welcomed with all courtesie
 they could shew, as joyfull of his safe
 returne, who had so honourably borne
 himself in that action, as if he had con-
 quered *Leviathan*, which kindnesse to the
 Knight, was recompence sufficient for
 all his charge and hard adventure.

The Princess, who was awaked from
 her slumber by report of the Knights,

com-

comming. Sumptuously armed as she
could, as becometh her estate accompa-
nied with all her troops of Ladies and
Maids of Honour. Came unto the Pre-
sence, who no sooner approached the
place where the Knight was but she be-
holding the exquisite perfection of her
beauty which he so much delighted in
was suddenly beleeved of his Senses
to that he stood as a man which had lost
himselfe, yet reviving loath to make
manifest with what great griefe he had
concealed so long humbly on his knees
presented the glory of his Enterprise
unto her saying. Most gracious Prin-
cesse as by your most excellent hands I
received my first flappe to honour, and
fighting for your Graces and Kingly
Fathers sake, it hath pleased God to
promote me with a happy victory, for
which good having nothing worthy to
present your Grace as I desire, yet in
knowledge of my duty to your Excel-
lence to whom my life and Service is de-
voted. I humbly beleech you accept of
Gentleman my Prisoner, and your No-
ble Father; morall Enemy. The Princi-
pall

esse, to whom nothing could be more
 pleasing. Then the squire's beloved
 Knight graciously accepted the peace
 her tendering great thanks for the favour
 as also for his valour shewed in her de-
 fence. And then turning to the captived
 Prince, she said, *My Lord, you see the chance of this world*
My Lord, you see the chance of this world
 and how mutable she is in all affec-
 tions, sometimes smiling, sometimes
 frowning, but whether by your Fortitude
 or cowardise, or both, you are now in
 their mercy, whose overdraw you shu-
 red your self off, and which you more
 desired then all the Territories of the
 Earth, but our God which never faileth
 with his Servants to perill, hath mighti-
 ly defended us: it is not your mighty
 powers, can dare the hearts of Christi-
 ans, whose God is their guide: neither
 regard we them at all as a match of my
 trust, your eyes can witness, who having
 an Army able (as you thought) to have
 vanquished all Christendom, are by a
 handfull to your multitudes surprised.
 Yet dismay not my Lord a Champion is
 your saylor, who will use you more
 than

honourably then you can imagine, or
 your hard heart can desire. The Prince
 which saw the beauty of the Princess,
 whom he so earnestly upon reports had
 desired, was astonished greatly, holding
 faine that was bytold, to be nothing to
 her worthinesse, therefore accusing him-
 self of great impiety, that had borne
 Armes against the only Paragon of the
 Earth, and up by courtesie have con-
 quered his love begun, ashamed of him-
 self, he saith.

Renowned Lady, Beames darling,
 & Beames chief pride, though mishap
 hath made me of a Prince and Heir to
 the mightiest Potentate of the earth,
 a captive and that by thy Champion I am
 dishonoured, and my power vanquished
 on foot, which may cause the thought
 that ever lived, to cry out on Fortune, &
 to curse the Destinies, yet am I comfort-
 ed in the sweetness of your words, which
 doth make me use thee most earnestly you
 might, or take his life that had vowed to
 use you with more care, then if by
 the greatest torments I could have af-
 flicted you withall, I had caused you to
 od many

many thousand deaths, if it were possible so many could be incident to one body. Had I prevailed of thy condescension famous Princess, I cannot say what I would, but vow unto thee by the honor of my Fathers Crown, while I breath remaine a true Liegeman unto thee vertuous *Amorosa*, whose courtisie hath subdued my choller, and put my oppressed heart from a million of cares wherewith it was oppressed. My Lord (quoth the Princess) your Lordship is merrily disposed, indeed women are Gods children, won with a toy, such Fooles they are: yet my Lord I would you did know, how little I esteeme the flattery of men, of what estate soever, they would spend their frivolous Speech elsewhere, for your Lordship, though you please to jest, I thank God you have such cause to be, whom I praise for the victory received, and next his duty, my Servant for his pains employed for our safety. And with these words she gave him so gracious a look, as well might the standers by see it was not fained, but that her Speech spoken in his praise, proceeded of inward

motions of the heart, which of the cap-
 tive Prince was not unperceived, which
 caused him to reply thus. I bid thee good
 Madam, for avoiding of that odious
 sinne of flattery, which my heart hath
 ever condemned, I dare not to say what
 I would, yet seeing the Destinies are so
 pleased, to yeeld me a prisoner to my
 enemy, I reckon my unhappinesse the
 lesse, which have so gracious a Lady for
 my keeper, of who, expecting no better
 then death I am by your comfort quite
 deprived of feare. And for this noble
 Gentleman, how Fortune and the Fates
 hath favoured him in this victory, where-
 in I am so dishonoured, every man can-
 not conceive. But were the honour
 thereof a million more, yet not to be
 weighed in the ballance, where your
 Graces counterpoise is fame, which
 is more to be esteemed then the worlds
 goods: how you hold him in regard I
 know not, but if an Enemies praise may
 any way honour him, be it; and with
 my blood will avouch, that for his valour
 none liveth on the confines of the earth
 his equal: wherefore Madam, boast you

of his worthinesse which in Perfection,
and worthy for all perfections, to be
honoured of the mightiest Monarch
that liveth, would have gained him
a great reward.

CHAP. XII.

How Marmariens King of Hungaria
who had suffered ship-wracks at Sea,
and a storm was brought on him, and
Trebilond on a Rafter, with his royal
entertainment by the Gentlemen of
the Country, and his honorable wel-
come to the Court by the King and
his Nobles.

When the Duke of
Hankes my Lord, quod
the Princess, my dear
good opinion of my son
is not yett. I doubt not but he
will be a great man, and
what you say shall serve, who
affire you is a courteous, as others
honourably and well. While they were
thus pleasantly discoursing,
brought the King, and that
Prince of Hungary, who by the
villain

of a cruell storme had suffered and
 swacke, was found on a Rafe, driven a
 shore on the furthest parts of his con-
 fines where being unknowne to any of
 his Subiects, but by his own report, was
 by the Gentlemen of his Countrey en-
 treated, as beleemed his estate: and ac-
 companied with a Princely traine, was
 within halfe a dayes journey of the
 Court. The suddaine report whereof,
 took their talke, the King commanding
 his traine presently to be ready horsted
 to accompany him, who with diligence
 failed not to obey his command: and
 so orderly marching through the City,
 they ride easily paced, untill they meete
 the stranger King, between whom great
 conference was used. The King gave
 cheere and loving countenance to the
 stranger, who had to the people
 so honoured him, by uttering this
 stranger, whereby his Countrey was
 made famous. Thus with divers
 courtesies they passed the time, untill they
 came to the Court, where a stately
 lodging was prepared for him, and Officers
 appointed to attend his person.

royally

royally as if he had beene in his owne
Pallace, where soliciting with the King
and his Nobles, we leave him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Marianus, being now in Court, in
sight of his Love and Lady, affections
began to revive, and a melancholy
passion possesse him, which was noted of
many, but chiefly of the Princess,
with their honourable parties, and
favourable proffers.

O ravishment Marianus,
Love's Heriack Champion, whose courage try-
ing with the scorching
flames of this his mi-
stresses beauty, had so much changed
his colour, and impaired his strength,
that enforced by great griefe and extre-
mity of his love, he withdrew him to his
chamber, where casting himselfe on his
bed with a million of sad thoughts
in his mind, determining to forsake the
Princess, and followe contrary
motions, and fearing the
inc.

success of his fate, carrying the report
of no better then a Merchant, which
might give cause of great dislike, and
disparage his Sute, he saith; Miserable
Armatius, whom the Fates continually
cause by their hard hap daily to com-
plaine, cursing the time of thy nativity,
and the starres which governed thine
aspects, wch neither time nor place can
remedy, faint hearted wretch, & seeking
thine owne overthrow, encreasest thy
griefe, by concealing the cause. Leftest
not thou thy Princely Father, to come
hither, where thou mightest enjoy the
presence of thy beloved mistress, and in
doing her service, to requite her with
thy love) and cowardlike faintest thou
to let her know thy zeale, whose courtesie
is without compare, and every way
deserveth a more regard then I holden
thee, that hast procured her liberty in
adventuring thy life, a pleasure that of
a thankful man can never be forgotten.
What knowest thou whether her love
be as much to thee, in whom womanly
modestie denieth to reveale, else mightst
thou happily know it. No, no, standing,
thy

Loves Herick Champion.

thy Fortune is not so happy, which e-
ver hast lived in unhappinesse, yet do
spare not, nor like a wretch die in thy
Cabinets Rowle thee, and consider what
thou art, give not over thy desires to mi-
serable death, without acquainting her
with thy love, spare to speake, & spare
to speed. A Proverbe not so old as time,
which if thou follow, will either give
thee comfort by her courteous grate,
or by deniall, hasten thy death, by which
thou shalt be freed from these torments
enjoying life, & living, enjoy thy sweet
delight, or by death end those torments.
In this passion, having banished dis-
spaire, arming himselfe with hope of
good successe, stretching his weak
limbes, he hasteneth to the Presence,
whose absence had bene noted of most
Courtiers attendance here, but especia-
ly of the Princesse, who (albeit) found
the company unfurnished, wanting his
company, yet durst not enquire of him,
doubting the suspicion of jealousies.
But Fortune who had so long frowned
at him with her frowne, gave him this
opportunity to raise him, whom she had
like

like to have overthrowne, chancing to
 look out of a window which opened
 into a Parke belonging to the Court, he
 espied the Princesse pleasantly passing
 the time with her Traiue of Ladies,
 which opportunity he was not willing
 to lose, but with all such speed as his
 fainting legges could make, revived by
 the sight of his sweet chaste, with all
 sailes spread, in short time he recovered
 his wished desire, who was no sooner
 of the Princesse scene, his humble duty
 done and she having requited the same,
 giving him the time of the day, with a
 most pleasant & friendly countenance,
 she challenged him of negligence, who
 she had not seen in two or three daies,
 and leading him politely, pretending
 matters of importance, to impart unto
 him, from the company, she brought
 him neere the side of a faire Copse,
 which so overshadowed them, that the
 Sunne beames could not offend them,
 where they might both boldly say
 whatsoever it pleased them, without
 being heard or seen of any, which
 might interrupt them, which caused her

to take opportunity to disscusse with
him thus. Servant (quoth she) I pray
thee say, of the duty thou hast vowed
thymaistrelle, & by those sweet thoughts
which are best pleasing unto thee, what
is the Lady to who thy love is dedicate
for love doublelle thou dost thy coun-
tenance be trayeth it, which I have no-
ted with more regard then becometh
a Maiden: yet of care to thee, whose
health is tender, for thy courtlye and
good Service done, which I would re-
quire in the best manner I might, and
for thy lookes shew thy heart cry-
eth to be pittied of thy Lady, let me
know her, who may chance stand thee
in some stead, for women may prevaile
much one with another. The Knight
wrapt into a heaven of loves, hearing
the Goddess of his devotion, with most
favour and kindnesse to use him, with a
blushing countenance standing at the
barre before her, whose Sentence pro-
nounced was either life or death he said.

Honourable and gracious mistress
give me leave to to call you my highnesse,
since you have gained a Captive, and

Tide of your Servant, and pardon my presumption, answering your demand; that I love I cannot deny, which argueth your skill in Physick great (whom) my tongue is restrained to reveale: but if your Highnesse could judge whose love I most adore, and long have, and judging, ease me, I should have cause to say, no Physick pretier on the earth whatsoever: might compare with my gracious Mistresse for skill: I dare say no more, fearing to offend. The Princess all this time gazed on the perfection of her Servant, as deeply enamoured of his perfection, as the Knight invelled with hers, for her Eye made Survey of his excellent feature, which she found more perfect, by how much the more she had bent her liking to love him. Thus Love which had united both their hearts, endued them with such a Sympathy of joy, beholding themselves all alone, that with over much joy they were taken home, to ease how much longer their hearts desired, to reveal to other know their loves, they could not reveale the same.

In this Heaven of happy content they
 had not long been, but *Syriss* a Lady,
 that attended the Princesse, brought her
 word, the King her Father, with the
 King of *Hungary* was coming into
 the Parks, which place they had chosen
 to recreate themselves : Where passing
 on by faire *Park*, they diligently listen
 to the sweet records of the pritty Birds
 who skipping from Tree to Tree, gave
 as well the content beholding it, as the
 Eare pleasure in their notes : great was
 the delight they received viewing the
 beauty of the place, which for pleasurable
 Walks, sweet Groves, and fruitfull
 Trees of all sorts was matchlesse : into
 which, many pleasant brookes had re-
 course; on the bankes of which, finding
 the place beautified with Natures gifts,
 they sat them downe, earnestly beho-
 ding the pleasure of the Fishes, how
 prittily they chased one the other, with
 many a pleasant conceived Toy, which
 they noted, censuring of each (everall
 action, as they thought best to increase
 their mirth. When some time was spent
 on this pleasant manner *Cassianus*

G

King

King of Trebisond finding himselfe all alone with the King of Hungary, having never questioned of him his unhappy Fortune, began with him thus.

CHAP. XV.

How the King of Hungary communed with the King of Trebisond. The Princess Amoretta discovereth her love. The Heroicke Champion by a Lecter craveth the Princess liking. The Knights Letter to the Princessse.

Now let it not be displeasing unto thee (famous King) that I intrude my selfe so farre into thy familiarity, to require the cause of your Graces travell, through which your life was so endangered, if you vouchsafe me this favour, you shall command a matter of more import, so it please you, at my hands.

The Hungarian King attending his unexpected question, was driven into such

such sundry thoughts, that his colour shewed better his discontent to recount it, then his tongue ablenesse to answer the Kings demand, how willing soever he was to satisfie him, yet after some pause taken, he saith.

Right courteous and Mirrour of the world for Nobility, though nothing can be more displeasing to my troubled heart, then recounting my adverse Fortune, yet that your Grace shall not find any ingratitude in me, at whose hands I have received such honourable entertainment, attend me.

It is not many yeares, since *Mantenna*, my Father deceased, who left me (unhappy I) his successor, to inherit the Crown, which I did not long enjoy, before *Mimaleon* King of *Egypt*, requested of me my Sister in marriage; who being beautifull, and in the flourishing time of her yeares, having not yet attained to the full of fifteen, young enough to be bestowed, yet of that Wisdom, that I referred the choice of her Love unto her owne liking.

King, induced therunto, by the many evils happening by such made Marriages, where the Children are forced by the covetous desires of their Parents, to join wealth to wealth; others for great Patrimonies, all for Lucre, few or none for love. To whom he answered thus.

But whether the beauty of my Sister *Timotea* (for so was she called) or the desire of her Dowry, which was great, or either of them, or both, I cannot say, but my Sister being made acquainted with his suite, I craved her answer, for which his Embassadors attended at my Court, with the best entertainment I could give, whom my Sister *Timotea* with her owne mouth answer'd (woe is me) unhappy the tongue that pleaded deniall to his suite, but most of all, unhappy the houre when first of all he determined to crave her at my hand, in whose power it was not to grant. No sooner arriv'd his Nobles at the Court, and he secretly received the Summe of her answer, but as one bereft of all honour, reason, and government, he vowed revenge on me and my Country. And leaving

leavying a mighty power, both of Horse
and Foot, attailed me in mine owne
Territories, whom by the mighty power
of the Almighty, I expelled my Land, to
their great dishonour, and no small losse
unto my Subjects. Yet how great soever
his overthrow was (an honorable mind
I must say) were the cause just, he or-
dained as mighty power by Sea, wherof
being by espials advertised, of the time
(as neare as they could gesse) they would
be ready, with a power well shipped &
furnished. I met him neare his owne
Confines, where a mortall fight was be-
gun, and most valiantly continued, nei-
ther side giving any shew of tainting.

But alas, too soone commeth that
griefe which melteth my hart into thou-
sands of teares, to recount the Admirall
of mine own Squadron being sunk, and
two others forced by the cunning hand
of their Gunners, to lye by the lee, the
rest fainted, which being perceived by
the Enemy, they boarded, and by hun-
dreds entered my Ships & Gallies, who
were valiantly repulsed. But men can do
no more then God will give them leave.

So long they continued the Fight, that the Scupars gullied bloud, as they had often with the water delivered by the Pumpe. And here lay some maimed, and there a number slaine. This pittifull Stratageme, when my heart with heavynesse beheld, being so hardly assailed my selfe, after that I was cleared from the Fleet, the wind favouring me with a happy gale, and my ship being good of saile, I forsooke the Fight, in hope to have recovered into mine owne Ceuuntry, and with a new supply, have given him welcome thither. But my hopes herein deceived, a boysterous storme growing, the Sea who is mercilesse, arose in extremity, swelling with such outrage that my battered ship no longer able to endure her cruelty, was put against our wills, on thy Coast, my Pilot unacquainted with the same, & a hoary mist overspreading the Land, suddenly the ship stucke, being neare the shore, which drave us to great terrour. Which to remedy, the Mariners did their best, but in vaine strive they that labour against his will that commandeth all.

What

What should I say the outrage of the storme was such, as forced the ship upon the Lee shore which gave us all cause to remember our Maker, and with harty prayer to crave his assistance: But our comfort was comfortlesse, our ship split and wee all driven to make what shift we might, my self hapning on the main Yard, after that I had beene grievously beaten at Sea, the whole night was driven ashore on your confines, where I ver heard of any other that were saved.

With this, the tears restrain'd his speech that he could not speake, which moved the King to more pittie of his estate, and friendly embracing him, he said; No more my Lord at this time, I am sorry that I have given you such cause of griefe, thus by recounting so lamentable a state, to renew your passed griefes. But comfort good King, when Tydes be at the lowest, they spring againe. If the Egyptian King be so extreame, reason with courtesie will not content him, the cause being no other, but to force love of a woman unto him, of w^{ch} (perhap) he were better be without. On þ word

of a King, and by my honour I sweare, I will not leave you, untill I see you settled in your Kingdome. Thus the King, who Sorrow had overburthened, was by the comfort of this noble King (his Hoast) recomforted, whose whole study was now in preparing of an Army to aide him, unto which care we leave them.

*Amorett*a, whose restlesse Passions neither time nor place could alter, burning in these remediless thoughts, considering the penance her loving heart was like to endure, she fell into this humor. *Amorett*a how have the Fates ordained to make thee unhappy; that thou being delivered from an oppressing Enemy, then steps in Love to begin a new Tragedy. Thou seest her fawnings is but flattery, then seeke to eschew them, enter not too far in the Foord, lest minding but to wet thy shooe, thou plunge over head and Eares. Thy years (albeit not many) with the Examples of others, whom thou hast read, may learne thee to be wise; if thy Fancy be fixed on such vanity as may breed thy Sorrow, expell it as thou mayst, suffer not Love

to

to harbor in thy heart, for harbored; he
commonly pleads possession; and once
possessed, neither force nor intreaty may
remove him, so ambitious a Tyrant is
he, that will oblige against law and all
hospitality, he holdeth what he list.

Alas *Amoretta*, if thy Enemy be
such, what availeth thee? thou maist wish
to be freed from his tyranny, but canst
never avoid it, so impetuous is he, yet
not manly, but as a Coward, making
the breach, where the wall is weakest:
poore women are the mark whereat most
commonly he aimeth, who being by
nature pitifull, are easie to believe; and
by some light credit, are taken by them
they best like of. Thus (poore wench)
dost thou nothing but leave thy feathers
against the wind, which returne into
thine own face, and thy Speeches uttered
in liberdishness will be challenged,
and like a Traiterous Rebel to his Deity
shalt thou be convicted, arraigned, and
condemned, for depraving his Godhead.
O sit beneath some tree, no speak against
the Majesty of a Prince, is what is it to
become the powder above. The best

remedy thou hast in reconciliation, wherewith the Gods are pleased, and hastily sorrowing for thy misse, yeeld thy selfe vanquished; and yeelding, seek by favour, to attend the end of thy desires. Thy love is matchlesse, and doubtlesse honourable, his countenance sheweth the true badge of Nobility, and his valour and bounty doe answer, what his other perfections doe promise: I have often heard it spoken, that womens helps in extremity have been great; if that be true proove *Amerita*, call thy wits together, and so end thy torments, by enjoying thy hearts content; so much discontent, by yeelding to the same.

This resolved, without longer stay, she called unto her *Syritha*, her chiefe Attendant; who from her infancy had bin brought up with her: In this *Syritha* she conceived her greatest hope, unto whom she said: *Syritha*, since I had reason to discern the good from evill, thou knowest how I have tendered thee, and how willing I would be to seek thy preferment; makerrall what thou please, so that thou be assured of

that, which justly thou maist hold in
suspence. But leaving these conjuring
words, I must *Syritha* commit vnto thy
secrets a matter of import, whereon my
honour and reputation dependeth. For
I tell thee *Syritha*, I have made choice
of thee amongst all those which I may
command, as of her I love, and have best
cause so to do, having had such society,
else should I rather chuse to dye ten
thousand deaths, then reveale it.

Syritha which had her whole hope of
good from the Princesse, hearing her
speeches, with tears standing in her eyes,
proceeding of joy, for the honour done
her by her Lady, protested unto her by
Heavens Maker, and what else he framed
to be secret in her determinations, and
do her best endeavour so accomplish
whatsoever she commanded. The Prin-
cesse taking her word for currant, in
whom she never found deceit, said, *Syritha*,
that it is incident to all creatures in
their kind to love. I know thy wits be
not so simple, but thou canst conceive,
and he that forgetteth is, directeth

our likings as best please him, be it Prince or Beggar, from the highest to the simplest, and he (my *Syritha*) hath linked my liking, to a most brave forward Gentleman (on whom I thinke) I affectio, which is blind, deceive me not, is worthy to be mated with the greatest in degree on the Earth. To keepe thee with frivolous speech, is no time now, having other matter enough to discourse: therefore that thou maist know him to whom my love is united, *Marianus* the new adopted Knight is he (*Marianus*) famous for his valour, renowned for his bounty, and admired for courtesie: He, he, *Syritha* is the joy of my heart, (and my hearts sole delight) without whom I cannot live, no I will not live. I neither may I live, such is the Service my heart hath vowed, in love unto him: therefore if thou love me as thou hast profest, by thy industry seek to save my life, which cannot but perish not obtaining my desires.

Syritha listning to her discourse, willing to become 2. in this Comedy, had her braines beating already in search of the

the charge committed unto her, yet would she not answer any thing suddenly, considering how displeasing speeches spoken out of time, be unto Lovers corralives: yet chearing the Princesse, she requested untill the next morning, respite for answer, which the Princesse granted, affying greatly in her, which was wise and well demeaned, many wayes (sometime doubtfull) sometime pleasing, sifted her senses to the proofe, whome so her study we leave.

The *Heroick Champion*, whose extreames were farre more (if more might be) after his abrupt parting with his Mistis, that he grew so melancholy, as nothing (were it Vandy) to relieve his weake Corpes, neither the daintinesse of pleasing sweet Musicke wherewith his Friends presented him, might any way delight him, so that in outrageous manner, he exclaimed on his misfortune, curling the Tidings bearer of the Kings repaire to the Parke, and his courage for not revealing his griefe, his Physician so ready to heare, that despairing of his hope to enjoy her, he was likely to none.

Chivv

chirke himselfe yett also affirming, that
the learnedst Physitian could not disco-
ver the Disease of his Patient, without
he shew it, how neare soever he guessed.
Enteing further in consideration of her
favourable speeches, shaking off feare,
like a hardy Souldier, he determined in
writing to let her know his love, since
he had no hope to meet her againe at
the like advantage. Therefore like the
condemned, hoping of pardon, liveth
the Knight, yett desirous to be resolved,
either of comfort or despaire, he calleth
for Pen and Inke, and wrote thus:

*To the onely Adressse of my heart, the
most beautiful Amoretta, happy
in your sweet heart's content.*

IF Jupiter being a God, were vanqui-
shed by love, and many mighty Ado-
narches have been forced to seek the love
of beautiful Ladies, I know the little
cause to challenge my Love, or to claim
against the Soveraigne, who hath tran-
scended all, and is above all, and I
will not say I have loved, but I
will say I love.

only) I omit, or to impair the many
griefes endured for your sake, which as
you are by nature pitifull, so wouche safe
to credit the lines of your sworne Ser-
vant, and by your favoure reclaine from
the gates of death, my soule which is
ready to leave this wretched corps, upon
your deniall. Therefore peerlesse Lady, if
thou hold the life of thy Servant in any
regard, grant me thy love, and with thy
love, gracious liking: so shall I live to
honour thee, or dye through thy unkind-
nesse. I write not as a Poet, but as a Souleset,
to your Highnesse: and therefore if thou
dislike these lines, attribute the short-
nesse of my stile, to my satisfacti-
on, which without flattery, have delivered
the summe of his misery, and hope shall
be by your gracious conside-
ration, attending your answer, either of life or
death, I will thy joyes never receive an
end, and my selfe speedy death, without
your liking.

Your Graces, In life most humble,
Your Graces, In life most humble,
Your Graces, In life most humble,

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

How Loves Heroicke Champion procured Siruba, the Princesses awayting woman, to deliver his Letter, and then perley.



When he had ended these lines, sealed and directed the same, he could not find by many devises which he sought, how it should be brought to his Mistresse hands, at length after many sundry wayes sought, this was thought best: calling to mind Siruba, the Princesses Maid, which he had often noted to be in some regard with her, he determined to procure her, either of courtship, or for reward to deliver it. And very early in the morning as soon as he could get ready addressed himselfe to the Court, attending the coming of his Mistresse thither, as she usually did but unhappily, for that day it fell out otherwise, this day for Sirubas absence was in her thoughts, hath her

mind so much of her love, and how to
obtaine it, as she enjoyed no sleepe by
night, nor content by day, so that she
was enforced with weaknesse to keepe
her Chamber, to the great discomfort of
the King, and grieve of all pLadies. But as
many crosses are incident to Lovers: so
Cupid which is good to some that serve
him (albeit) the newes of his Ladies ma-
lady was burthensome to him, yet this
pleasure it brought him: it fortun'd
Syritha, with whom his chiefe desire
was to have some Speech, passing into
the Garden either to walke, or for some
occasion of her Ladies, whom *Marianus*
followed with a cheerfull countenance,
more like a Novice in Loves Schoole,
then any wayes skillfull: yet whetted on
by the hopes his heart conceived, he sa-
luted the Gentlewoman, who was not
a little abashed to see y Knight so neere
her, nor could she judge any cause of his
comming unto her, yet as she was con-
tentous, as willing to heare what he would
say, as he to utter the same, with a face
blushing, shewing a kind countenance,
she enquired of his health, with other

to the point of his health, and other

ordinary prattle: which he answer'd, returning her many thanks, said; Mistrisse *Syrissa*, though my deserts have never merited favour at your hand, yet let me crave your furtherance in a Suite, for that I heare the Princesse is weake, and not willing to be troubled, that I may not attaine her Speech, and my businesse of importance, compelleth me to morrow early to leave the Court, to deliver this letter to her owne hands, and at your leisure returne me such answer as she please to deliver. In doing which, you shall doe me a favour of great extreme, which shall not be bestowed on an unthankfull man. The Gentlewoman which did know where the Princesse lieth did wring her, supposing the Knight to be wounded with like affection, was glad to become so happy a Messenger, to her who could willingly vouchsafe him as partner of her best fortunes, yet making a kind deniall, she said, Sir, though I could willingly doe you more Service, then modesty will acquaint you with, it is not the part of our Country Gentlemen, to make posts of Gentlewomen, having Pages fit for

the purpose : if I refuse your request, attribute it to no discourtesie in me, which am very loath to offend her Highnesse, not knowing whither the Sentence of your paper may discontent her or no. That many Messengers have incurred displeasure, yea and losse of life as the cause hath deserved. I hope it is not unknown unto you, yet hath the harmlesse Messenger known as little what he carried, as I desirous to know of you.

Sweet *Syritha*, quoth the Knight, that it is wisdom to beware by others harms, I denye not, yet is it discourtesie to deny the request of a Gentleman, which have ever shewed my selfe a dutifull Servant to his Highnesse, and honouring him, can I frame my heart to prejudice that Lady of incomparable vertue? No, no, Havens never permit me life, to offend her in the least sort. Therefore doubt no such matter, for on the word of a Gentleman my life shall be offered, and freely given, to excuse thy friendship, wherein I am so greatly pleased by you. *Syritha* noting by his changing color in telling his tale, his heart was not his own some

one more busynesse in his hand then he
 would impart, loath to offend his pre-
 sence by her deniall; And for perswa-
 ding my selfe of your loyalty, I will for
 this time become your Embassador, al-
 though it should impaire my credit with
 her Excellence, whose fauour I hold as
 deere as my life, and tharvon shall assure
 your selfe of my trustworthines heerein, so
 please it you to meet me in this place
 to morrow, by that time the Sun's power
 shall haue drawne the dew from off the
 Earth, I shall returne you answer as you
 desire. *Alas, my dear friend, I am
 in debt to you for the service you have
 done me.* Thanks good *Swabz*, for thy com-
 melle, assure you I will neede in thy
 debt, ifeuer *Maria* and thy sequent
 by any industry. In the meane time (as
 he) fauor me so highly as were able for
 my sake, and pulling of a Diamond of
 great price gaue it her, which she was
 loath to accept, yet giuing thanks for his
 condescension she said, all of I was, my name
 is *Sir*, would you did understand, I
 praye me my parent, that you should
 knowe me with him, or do you good in
 hope of benefit; for as it is my father's
 will, so I am


Gentle

Loves Artick Champion.

Gentlewoman to take gifts bestowed in
such manner: for it is countesse and no
part of a woman-like condition, to refuse
the gift of a friend: therefore accept
my thanks, till I may better deserve it.
Thus time passing away, Syntia taking
her leave, departed towards the Prin-
cesse, and the Knight to his lodging,
where how many sundry thoughts afflic-
ted him, I leave to them, that have ex-
perienced the like.

CHAP. XVIII

How Syntia happened to the Prin-
cesse, and how after many pri-
vate communications on both parts, she
delivered the Letters, and how she
obtained grace with the Prin-
cesse, and her resolution to
love, and her kind acceptance of his
suit.

yntia, come to the Prin-
cesse, and by her plea-
sure was admitted
into the Prin-
cesse's presence, who
perceived her
being

quainted with her malady, who calling her to her beds side, she enquired where she had spent the time so long from her, knowing that all her attendants were combersome unto her. but onely *Syrisha*, with whom she might passe the time in discoursing her love.

Madam, duty commands me, answer your demand, yet having been to search some daintine that might yeeld delight to your weak stomack, and cause better digesture, by chance prying into a garden for such things, I was encounered by the best skild in the Dominions of *Trebisond*, who gave me a receipt, which I judge by my simple skill, will give your Majesty great ease; yet doth the Physician doubt whether your stomacke will digest it. This gracious Lady quoth *Syrisha*, hath beene the cause of my absence, and no other.

(Alas good wench) how am I beholding to thee, that caring to recover my strength, searchest the depth of thy skill, but *Syrisha*, in vaine seekest thou her health, whom no Physician with all his herbs, drugs, and simples, balms, emplaisters,

plaisters, or what Art may provide, can remedy, onely God the great commander, must by his grace bring my desires to end, or by death and my daies of life.

What Madam, ever in this time, once alter these discords which make your musicke jar, and sing the beliefe with a cheerfull voice, so may your mind be a little eased, and the receipt I have to minister, worke with the more effect: I speake this Madam, of experience, for every skilfull Physician will prepare the body of his Patient, before he minister. Therefore Madame, if you will shake off this melancholy, you shall have a taste of what I promise, if not, your grace must pardon me, it were great pitty so precious a thing should be cast away.

Well *Syricha* (quoth the Princesse) thou art disposed to crosse me with thy words, which doe but increase my Disease, yeelding small comort: therefore leaving those jests, say me my good wench, if thou hast ought will doe me good (if not) use me no more thus unkindly, lest overcome with the extreame

of my griefe. I chance to say with my
tongue, what my hart will repent, or use
my hands with such rigour, as becom-
meth not a Maiden.

The Gentlewoman seeing the wind
blow so warme, fearing as much as was
promised, seeing y^e Princesse impatiencie
such, thought not good to tempt her
above her strength: for women being by
nature warm, with a little fewell will be
made hot, past reason: wherefore making
a preamble to her discourse, like an elo-
quent Orator, began thus.

(*Mariana*) with that word, making
a long pause, to note the Princesse coun-
tenance, On the suddaine naming her
beloved, was interrupted thus; *Maria-
nus, Syritba*, what franticke humour
causeth thee to name him in this man-
ner, with whom thou hadst never any
thing to say? Madame (qd. *Syritba*) at-
tend the rest, before you either condemne
me, or commend me. Then proceed,
quoth the Princesse.

This *Marianus* of whom my Tale
is before your Excellence to be told, is
that Knight, who of your Majesty is
called

called the *Heretic's Champion*? this
Knight, as it is told me, loving Lady,
but whom I cannot declare, before I
know: but as it is told me by his deare
friend which knoweth the secrets of his
heart, so tormented is he in his passions,
that the night naturally made for rest
(restlesse) he consumeth in great discon-
tent (the day) wherein all creatures de-
light, is unto him deathsome, so that
through watching, and refusing his
dyet, is altered from the sanguine, unto
the yellow coloured Saffrone (yea Ma-
dam) these mine eyes are witnesses of it,
who this day saw him passe into the
Court, so feeble, that his weak Legs
might hardly endure the waighe of his
body. No more of this my sweet Syr, be-
lest thy tongue busied too long on this
Tragedy, overcome with the extremity
of my griefe, I be enforced to seek for
aid of my torment, by dispatching my
owne life. Oh Syr, is this thy comfort-
able consolation? Is this the release thou
preachest off, which would yield me
such quiet of mind? Unhappy Lady,
why should I live to see another enjoy

my Love? Is not *Mariana* my Surname
have not I made choice of him, and shall
as other no way worthy to enjoy him,
have that interest which might delight
the Goddesses? Peace *Amarante*, whi-
ther comest thou? Let reason subdue
rage, let reason subdue rage, let not every
one know thy love to *Mariana*, but
conceale it as thou maist, and seek some
secret devise to give thy heart ease, by
death which is thy best remedy, yet
would I live to become a succour for
the well deserving Knight, and gain his
hearts desire for him, if I might. Cruell
were that dame, and not worthy to en-
joy a simplest groome, which canseleth
for love, consumeth such a man in all
perfections and lineaments of body, as
Marianus, without yielding him love.
But hearken *Syritha*, that thou maist in
time when my body shall be interred
among the dead, report unto my Love
(and loving Knight) how deare I held
his love, as my countenance oft shewed
(though he) careless of loves toys never
regard it, & for he shall well know as my
last end how I wish his welfare, for but

this for me, by his friend to learn Ladys
name whom the K. is so intralld. This
is all the Service I will ever command
thee, that knowing her, I may become an
intercessor for him, who my heart more
desireth then all the worlds possession.
With this, teares which trickled downe
from her eyes, restrained her tongue. In
such sorrowfull passiō, her Maide became
a partner, & grieved for her folly, com-
mitting so heinous a fault in procuring
the same, she excused it in this manner.

Most gracious Princeesse, how much
grieve to see your discomfort, I cannot
say, but hope your Grace will pardon
me, which have been more bold (presu-
ming on your favour) then becometh
me, neither what I have done (gracious
Lady) was of any intent to offend you,
but to acquite my selfe of blame, in a
matter which I have of course under-
taken, as the Sequels shall manifest. If it
shall please your Ladship to permit this
letter which will (no doubt) relieve you
without further pain to me, or trouble
to your Grace, what she is that I best
belov'd of the *Herwick Champion*.

on the Earth. This letter I received in his hands, who hearing of your disquiet, desirous (as it would seeme) to acknowledge his duty to you, conjured me by many faire words, and proffers of good, to deliver it unto your hands; which albeit for modesty I did long refuse thrusting that from me with my finger, which I would willingly have drawn to me with all my force: in the end I consented, and the rather for your Ladships quiet, which I suppose, will bid it well-come for the Masters sake, who if my judgment in the Planet Venus deceive me not, will prove shortly a conjunction, or else never trust my skill againe; for Venus being in the signe Leo, hath dominion over both houses viz he and she, or he and you.

The Princeesse at her last shift, when she heard Syr *Andreas* tale, void of all hope to enjoy her beloved *Marianne*; after she had a while paused, as one at length awaked from her *memento*, as from sleepe she saith: Now trust me wench thou hast cunningly gone about the bush, and hast dauntly sought to enter

into my deepest secrets; yet how cunningly so ever you have dealt, there may be a quillity to deceive both thee and him: but I pray thee *Synthia*, tell me what speeches used the *Heroick Champion* at the delivery thereof, tell me sweet Girl in friendship.

The despairing Knight (good Madam) for so I must call him, how ever his valour shewes it selfe in field, as no doubt worthily; so saith report: yet in love I see his darknesse, who loveth, yet dare not reveale the summe of his desires, but must commit it to a tell tale paper, languishing to the death, wanting his delight, and prolonging his sorrows by silence, his looks bewraying more then he can utter: for be it said, he that had seen not long since his beauty and gallant grace, the ability of his body, and noted every particular lineament, at this time with the debility thereof, should see a *Metamorphosis*, which might move the most hardest heart to pity, the cause to me unknowne, but suspected. The assurance I doubt not but your Grace will soon understand, if you be so safe to

teare the Seale and peruse the contents.

The Princeesse which thought every minute a yeare till she had knowledge of the Knights mind, put her Maiden from her prattle with a fained message, when being all alone, with a number of sorrowfull sighes for the Knights perplexity, she read, and many times read those lines, which gave her first comfort of enjoying her hearts content: how welcome they were unto her, it may better be imagined thē explained, whose head was wholly busied in answering the same, for which she thought it not unfit to use the helpe of *Syrisha*; whet-fore resting from her former studies, we leave her conceyting on her love, till *Syrisha* her return; who seeing her Ladies colour somewhat revived, began to smile, Madam (quoth she) though I made a fault in detaining so long the Physick, that I promised you, yet I hope your Majesty will pardon that offence, considering the good it doth in working; how you digest it I know not, but he that hath least skill in judging complexion, will say your marriage is mended.

ded by twenty in the hundred; if you
recover but so much of your losse every
two daies, there are few (in one week)
will belceve you have beene sicke. Well
wanton, well (answer'd the Princesse)
you have beene prittily disposed to play
your part, and take your pastime in be-
holding the folly of both our loves,
which I am the more willing to forger.
In that thou hast so rightly judg'd of
both our griefes. But leaving jest, I pray
thee say my sweet *Synthia*, what said my
servant when he delivered these letters
unto thee?

Madam, to say truth; nothing touch-
ing his love; but imported with such
earnestness, for the presenting them
unto your hands, as might have made
many proud to do so remarkable a deed,
driving it with speech so pittifull, and
lookes so ruefull: for mine owne part,
my heart imagining by your affection,
that the goddes which cause your griefe,
had feared him; and well knowing
where Love is wanted, the paine well
the others good; though I were
hardly won to the same, I undertooke

the hazard of your good will, promising
to returne to him an answer thereof,
wherein I shall breake promise, without
you grant your consent.

Oh *Syritha*, doubts thou of my con-
sent for answering of his kind Letters,
which have endured so many nights
of unrest, and carefull daies for his sake?
No, Heavens never grant me good in
this world, if I seek not his content, and
that with so good love and affection, as
he offereth his love and Service to me:
unlike were I else, that loving am be-
loved, should suffer my dearest love to lan-
guish, who may remedy it. Therefore
Syritha, as thou hast plaide the Advo-
cate, so make I thee my principall and
chiefe Secretary: peruse those lines, and
in right consider if that his griefe de-
serve not to be pitied, then let me see
thy skill in enditing, to the which thou
shalt have my helpe. Delay the time no
longer, hunger (my *Wench*) is sharpe
Sawce (as those say which have good
stomackes) and I measuring his defects
by mine own, imagine that meat can
not be more pleasing to the hungry, than
the

the unexpected tidings of consent from
his new acknowledge Love. Soft Sir,
Madam (qd. *Syritha*) makes the sweetest
Man, say our husbands: your Ladship
is farr wide, what, no sooner as the stile,
but over, hast makes wast; looke before
you leape, lest a blocke unthought of,
chanes to breake your shins. What if
these letters impart his love, how are you
assured thereof? Men are subrell, and can
cast many colours to deceive Women;
all is not gold that glistereth, nor all Su-
gar that hath a sweet taste, under the
greenest Grasse, lurketh the poisoned
Adder, & Crocodile sheddeth most tears,
when he seeketh most to deceive: try
ere you trust, Madam, repentance comes
too late; therefore howsoever you affect
him, concale it: Lightly wonne, is as
lightly lost. The Labourer that gaineth
his money by hard labour, is more chary
in parting therewith, then the purloining
Thiefe, or the rytous youth, which by
subrell practises draweth all he can from
his kind Parents, to maintaine his in-
ordinate expences. Let him bite on the
bridle a while, yet gently have his curb,

that he gall not (a little thing pleaseth a
 Child) & a good countenance is worth
 gold, to him that regardeth it, as he pro-
 fesseth. Weigh your owne estate, which
 is faine to this most famous Crown of
 Trebised, with y basenesse of his calling,
 which was no better than a Marchant:
 Consider what a corrosive this love of
 yours would be to your honorable Fa-
 ther, should he know it, and how your
 Nobles would stomacke him for his
 birth, grieving to live in obedience to
 one so farre their inferior. The envious
 regard not what vertues he is posses-
 sed with, which I must needs say, deserve to
 be accounted: the man gaining honour
 by vertue and valor, is more worthy to
 governe the state then the Noble, which
 agnobleth his house by his bad demer-
 its. How many such there be in this
 Court, I grieve to see, who living licen-
 tiously, abuse themselves in such odious
 manner, that if your Ladiship heard the
 justifull complaints of the Commons,
 crying out on the Prince for justice a-
 gainst them, and how by favour of their
 friends (ruling both the King & State)
 they

they are reborned, cleared of the crime
and the power of sin, returned
with a cheerful heart to break the heart of a
simple man, which which may be more
harmless than easily remedied.

But touching the Heretic's Complaint

from whom I have digress, I speak not
any thing to disparage his love, nor to
draw your liking from the Knight, but
wish you temper your affection in such
sort, y^e you may long enjoy it, with con-
tent to you both, and so governe your
Graces looks and countenances, that y^e
lightness of the one, nor the liberall be-
flowing of the other, give jealous heads
any cause of suspicion. For Princes are
great marks, and have many Eyes behol-
ding them and once perceived, what po-
ssible it may procure to either part, your
wisdoms can conceive. Thus in duty
have I spoken, and delivered y^e one
advise, which I refer to your Graces
better consideration. And thus thou
shalt see, my Son, that the Prince of Peace
shall be a Counsel to the Prince of Peace
Doubtless the Prince of Peace shall be a
Counsel to the Prince of Peace

TOWARD Oyle to it. I find thy love so
 sweet towards me, that I cannot requite
 it, which with such good regard balanceth
 each perill incident to both our
 states, if thou canst as well devise how we
 may enjoy our delight, without which
 we perplexed cannot long endure, what
 is it that *Amerette* shall ever enjoy, but
Syritha shall command? Then as thou
 tenderest my good, bekinke thee of some
 remedy, for my love to him is such, as
 nothing may extinguish. Say my sweet
Syritha, shall I by writing answer his
 Letters, or no? In this I will be ruled by
 thee, how gladly soever I wish his com-
 fort, in whom, of all Earthly creatures,
 consisteth my most comfort. Experience
 is the best wisdom (saith *Syritha*) who
 would ever have beleev'd *Love's* power
 to be of such effect, how imperious soe-
 ver he seemed, had they not seen and
 heard what I doe; through which I am
 compelled to recant my heresie, and say
 Love is a god, or how is it possible he
 could command Princes. But to your
 sweet request, when you have received
 the answer of *Marianne's* letters to me, I

was never so bold of vs. as now to be
 roused to be counsellor to your Excel-
 lence, to take so great a matter upon
 me, yet shall I (if so please it you to heare
 me) deliver my simple opinion, as I would
 doe my selfe in the like action. The old
 Wives say, they that feed with the Deuill
 must haue a long spoone, and they that
 gee about to matter Love, had need of
 many good preceptes. I dissuade you
 Grace J. will not to forget in for I see it
 is vaine, neither would I wish you to an-
 swer by writing, for a paper is soon lost,
 and lost, to whose finding it shall come,
 it is uncertaine, as soon to some enuious
 Enemy, as a wel-willer, in which some
 word simply meant of you or me, may
 be construed by them at their pleasure,
 whereby your name may be brought in
 question, and a slander raised, is not so
 easily suppressed; writing is a speciality,
 whereof the subtil Lawyer takes no
 small advantage: to avoid all which
 casualties, this may you doe; pretend
 some matter of conference with him, &
 appoint the time when he shall attend
 your pleasure at your Lodging.

being secretly near you, & at such times
as the King your Father shall be em-
ployed in serious affaires, so may you
use your Speech at your pleasure: This
would *Syritha* doe, your Grace may use
your discretion.

I like thy devise well (good *Wench*)
and give thee many thanks (quoth the
Princesse) therefore faile not to meet him
for thy promise, what else I refer to thy
best judgment.

Now in faith Madam (quod *Syritha*) you
have made a good choice for a Soliciter,
but take me as I am, this is the first Suite
that ever I was retained for; nor I doubt
not (if I speed well now) of many *Clie-
ents*. As they were thus pleas'd between
themselves, they heard a Trumpet sound
to horse, which caused the Princesse to
send her Page to enquire the cause, who
return'd her answer, that the King with
his traine were setting forward to hunt
a wild Bore, which his Forrester had
rowled: This newes gavethem cause of
joy, hoping that Fortune favoured them
with a happy time, which they were
both loath to omit, doubting that the

you

op

op
wh
cill
him
ly
wil
as
den
foe
pre
nob
Pag
wh
dou
eith
erl
hear
wh
reou
won
war
had
plo
his
Pri
co
cau

opportunity; the Princesse especially, who could not be quieted in mind, untill she heard her Knight answer for himselfe. Wherefore a Page was presently commanded to search for the Knight, willing him with such convenient speed, as he could to meet *Syritha* in the Garden; the Page used such diligence, that soon he was brought unto the Knights presence, whom he found solitary (as a holy Father) at his Orizons; whom the Page awaked with his joyfull message, which was welcome unto him, albeit doubtfull (whether of weale or woe) either to augment his Sorrowes, or utterly to extinguish them. The sudden hearing of which, caused him to pause a while, when having determined, courteously returned answer to the Gentlewoman, that he would attend her, he rewarded the Page so bountifully, as he had cause to boast him of his well employed Service. *Syritha* having received his answer by the Page, advertised the Princesse thereof, who commended her to haste; lest she gave the Knight cause of discontent by her long stay.

but

but for all her speed *Mariana* was long there before, attending her coming: who was no sooner of him perceived to enter the place, but his heart, presaging some good, was more delighted thereat, then all the motions that could be imagined, after his courteous salutations done, thus said:

CHAP. XVII.

How Loves Heroicke Champion was brought to the Princesse presence by Siritha, then loves being discovered, a consent was of both parties agreed upon to love. The Knight discovereth himselfe to the Princesse: unto whom he unfolds all his love, with the originall proceedings.

 West *Syritha*, I know not what to imagin of thy sudden message, yet willing to be resolved, as one that by thy answer expecteth his doome, either of life or death, I send thy pleasure: say therefore sweet Lady, what saith the Princesse to my Letters?

terewith whom *Syrish* purposed to be something pleasant, and not to cloy his stomach with such pleasant confectiōs, that he should surfeit therewith, and framing a countenance to her Speech, she said.

Sir Knight, of all the Gentlemen in the Court of *Trefisland*, my good opinion was such of you, that on your word, I durst have hazarded my greatest credit, which expectation thou hast far deceived, and therefore not worthy to be accounted amongst such honorable men at Arms, which take their principall honour, holding their words with Gentlewomen. As the delivery of which Speech he that had took regard to the Knights countenance, might have thought him past Physicks recourse: And withall standing so mute, it veely perswaded *Syrish*, that he was ready to deliver his interest of life, which made her utter her rough words, and with a true that made these new fictions, doubting that her Comedy began in mirth, should prove a Tragedy to the great griefe of whole Country, which generally honoured him.

him, Wherefore taking him by the hand,
 she said, Sir Knight, I am forry I have
 charged you so farre, what cause for-
 ver I had, but it is womanlike to be shew
 with words, and no fit passion for a man
 of your profession. That you may com-
 fort your selfe, I first pardon the offence
 against me committed (and enjoin you)
 as you tender your credit with the Prin-
 cesse *Alvares*, that you faile not to re-
 pare at such convenient time as you
 best can, unto her Lodging, where if you
 hold your word, you will excuse your
 challenge.

Oh *Synthia*, how have thy Speeches
 tormented me, filling my Eare with
 such a confusion of comfortable thoughts
 as have overcome my Sence, that I am
 almost become insensible, as if I had
 spark of Gentility abide in thee. Say my
 good Lady, what countenance gave the
 Princesse to my last full paper? Would
 shee have the reading of them? Or how
 could she comfort you good Knight, if she
 were pitty, being already so full of
 Dolor, which piteous me to behold.
 Comfort can give none to thy distressed

this, thy Sure is Love, as your Letters impart, in which despaire not: for thy Mistress is a wom. though a Princesse, and how pittifull our Sexes, I will not boast but wish thee not despaire; If thy Birth were as great as thy vertus, thou mightst boord and bed, as good as the Princesse. *Ame.* unto who I will bea faithfull Soliciter. Mistake me not *Marianus*, I speak as a friend, & so leave thee, untill thy coming to my Lady, which detract not, for time lost is such a precious thing, as can never be recalled. Before who, when thou shalt come, plead thine own cause, & discover thine own griefe. And so farewell.

Marianus, which had some greater hope by *Syritha*'s last Speeches, was so overjoyed, that he could not bid her farewell; yet after his *Adieu* past, he saith: farewell the faithfullst friend in my distresse, that ever I found. Oh *Syritha*, happy must thou be in thy loves, and highly honoured amongst men, by whom my cares are eased, comforted (faithfull *Syritha*) the winner of my hearts happy content, by whom all hope, I am by thy faithfull friend
in

in delivering my message, freed of so heavy a burthen, as was likely to have borne my poore oppressed heart in a million of pieces. Thus applauding *Syritha*, he had almost forgotten his word. Leaving further to discant on this plain song, returns we to the Princess, who was advertised by her Gentlewoman what had passed between the Knight & her, not omitting his heavy looks, and pitifull Speeches. And then againe, as glad to please the Princess, whom she was assured loved the Knight, letted not it large to set out his honours gained, his comelinesse of person, bounry, and whatsoever the world admired in him, shouglyly advanced to the great content of the Princess, who thought every month a year untill she saw him, whom she with harty desire expected (long looked for, comes at last.) And *Amoretta*, who at a casement waited diligently his coming, espied her beloved Knight, what joy it caused her then judge, which better experience hath made perfect in Lovers delights. The Princess having the sight of her so long

desired Knight, sent Syribe to entertain him, and to bring him to her presence. The Princeesse studying to frame her countenance for his welcome, bethought herself of sundry means, ofteons, doubting by her too pleasant & kind usage, to be thought too forward in love, the what discomfort her heavy looks might move to him, whom she most desired to please. In this quandary, sitting on a Pallet, leaning her head on her pillow, Syribe hath brought the Knight to her presence, who doing his duty was by the Princeesse againe saluted.

Attending like the guilty condemned, his Sentence from her mouth, which was to give him either life or death, the Knight thus at a *non plus* overcome with the beholding of the Princeesse excellent perfection, was by her the mirror of all honour and courtesie, removed out of his dumps, in this manner.

Sir Mariann, whether I should suffice thy presumption in writing so boldly unto me (or no) I am not yet resolved, but before I acquaints my Father therewith, I thought good to hear thee
 Speake,

Speak, for that I would not suddenly disgrace thee, whom I have so often graced: as well to heare thy intent committing so great a folly, as what you can say in excuse therof. Princes are not to be jested with, nor to be attempted in such manner by their inferiours, and therefore thou hast highly erred in that thou hast done, and incurred the danger of our strictest lawes, by which thou art already condemned, were thy fault known. The Knight standing at the bar, where Beauty sat chiefe Judge, was surprized with so many griefs, that he might hardly utter any word, yet revived by hope of these comfortable and sweet word pronounced by Syritha, he saith:

Gracious Lady, that I have presumed far, I cannot but acknowledge, yet that I have incurred such punishment as your Highnesse inferreth, I deny, unless death be the guerdon assigned for the falsfull (for dutifull Service) and intire affection, urged me to seek thy favour in love, without which I may not live: so deeply are thy vertuous perfections imprinted in my heart, which if I enjoy
not,

not, I desire, no longer to breath. Therefore Madam, if thou disdain his love, that living dieth continually for thee, do but say the word, and this blade so often imbrued in the bloud of mine Enemies, shall sacrifice his Masters owne true hart before thy face, that thy cruell selfe (maist witness to thy selfe) how faithfully thy Seryant hath loved thee.

The Princesse grieved to heare these Speeches, moved with a great ruth, could hardly forbear shedding of teares, yet modesty the ornament of womankind, caused her to feign a counterfeite shew of displeasure to him, whose teares wroong drops of bloud from her tender hart: yet that she might not so suddenly confesse her harts desire, nor give him cause of utter despaire, she saith; *Marianne*, that thou maist see, and feeling, report in all places, where ever thou shalt be come of Womens pittie, I grant thee garden for thy fault, and with my pardon, thy life, which was wholly in me to dispose.

For loving me as thy Prince, I hardly thank thee, but in seeking to obtain my love, as thy wife, that have bene do-
mic.

ained to diuers and sundry Princes, in
 that thou errest, For each estate frame
 themselves in love, to their equals, so
 shall they sooner obtaine their desires,
 and their loves in more tranquillity be
 maintained. Thou knewest thy birth
 how base was, & though for thy vertues
 it pleased my Princely Father to advance
 thee, who cannot of his Princely nature
 but reward the defects of the well de-
 serving, If for his good to thee, thou seek
 to rob him of his Child, therein thou
 shewest a very ingratefull mind, and
 layest open unto the world thy base con-
 dition.

Therefore persist to prosecute thy Suit,
 Let reason vanquish that brain-sick hu-
 mor which doth afflict thee, in doing
 which, thou shalt shew thy love to be
 thy selfe: For no greater conquest can
 be achieved, then conquering a mans
 owne effects. Doe this, & thou shalt find
 me verie truly faithfull & assured friend,
 who will be as orefull to advance thee,
 as I have found thee ready to pleasure
 me.

And good Madam (answer of Knight)

I have often heard, the whole needs no
Physitian, it is easier far to give coun-
sell then to take it. The full gorged
Churle little regardeth the starving
creature at his gate, but (Madam) could
you conceive the least part of many thou-
sand griefes that afflict me, you would
pitty me at least, though you yeilded me
no further favour. If thy heart be not
harder than the Adamant. (pitty me)
sweet Lady, and yeeld thy grace to aug-
ment my life, or utterly denie me your
favor for ever. I expect but your answer
for my resolution is no other then I
have profest (dastards feare to die) but
the noble mind preferreth death which
endeth all sorrows; before a life to be
continued with discontent. The Prin-
cesse, which was acher wits end, as full
of grieve as he of Sorrow, turned her
speeches from her matter, to question
him of his Country, the manner of the
Court, and state thereof, thinking so to
have beguild the time, and put him off
for that season. But so long talked she,
but she was forced in the end, to con-
fess her love to be no way inferior to

his. Thus as I have said, demanding
of the Knight many questions, she ear-
nestly intreated him to resolve her whe-
ther the Prince *Armatius*, were such as
the world reported him: who had name
to be a Paragon, excelling in all ac-
tions required in a Noble man. The Prince
hearing his name called in question by
the Princeesse, on a suddain, believed ve-
rily that she had some secret knowledge
of him, which made him with blushing
cheeks to say, What reports soever you
Grace have heard of that Prince *Arma-
tius*, I am not a Subject I was to his
Father, and ought to speake reverently
of him (yet which is truth) and not for
affection or delight; to say other then
I will with my blood avouch. Where-
fore Noble Lady, I will truly answer
your demands:

The Prince, whose Father was much
loved, gaining the love of all men, with
care and honour maintained the repu-
tation of his Country, which by his
negligence is blemished, who neglects
the duty of a Child, without regard
of Father, Crown, or Kingdom.

himselfe, no man knowes where, or whether he rest alive or no: since which time, the King his Father, who loved him too deare (if Fathers love may be too deare) hath likewise contented himselfe, and liveth in exile. The Mother Queen, hath resigned her due to death, leaving (by losse of those honourable persons) their Country without a head, and their State by Subjects to be governed, whereby a ruine of the Kingdom is like to ensue, all proceeding from the Prince. A miserable country is y^e (q^d. the Prince) & to be lamented; but more y^e losse of so noble a race, y^e Father having bin such, and the Son as (report saith) so forward. But say (good Knight) q^d. she was there never any cause supposed of their departures; nor did not y^e Father through his harsh demeanor, for youth in these times take unkindly their Fathers unkindness: and Age is froward, w^{ch} frowardness might minister great cause of discomf^t. Madam (q^d. the K^e.) In my knowledge, this I will say, my Father being a Courtier in some reg^y. wherby I came familiar with y^e Prince,

and as youth will make choise of some one to participate with, so it pleased the Prince loving my Father well, to use my company in all his exercises, through which I saw his demeanour, with such reverent duty to the King acknowledged, and as kindly requited of the King, as on the earth might be found love more perfect till his Speech fayling in his mouth, he could utter no more. The Princess giving heed to each word by him pronounced, albeit she saw the repeating of the Princes life, was somewhat cumbersome unto him, yet ceased he not to urge him, to shew such sorrow in delivering the story so of her desired. At Madam (quod the Knight) at his departing began our Countreys grieve and my sorrow, from whom in life I could never be separated, such was my love to him, which refused himselfe, his Crown, and dignities. A dolefull tale hast thou delivered (quoth the Princess) which perceive moveth you to impatience, wherefore, one demand and an end. The Prince *Armatius*, made choise of you for his companion: Then under

discreetly let me crave (all law of friendship
excepted) did he not acquaint you with
his determinations: for me thinks it is
scarcely credible, if such an unity should
be amongst men, their loves being so
perfect, but he should disclose each se-
cret intent whatsoever: many reasons
draweth me to suppose it, which I will
omit, for I perceive I am too tedious.
Your Ladship urgeth me farre, yet will
I accomplish your request, who have
power to command me. The Gentle-
man who never offended, but in com-
mitting of this great offence, long be-
fore his departure, having he like some
motion of desire in his thoughts, be-
came of a pleasant Gentleman, the most
melancholiest that could be found, that
quite abolishing all company, he best
contented himselfe with his secret co-
gitations; continuing this honour so
long, that he fell sicke of an extreame
fever: which so increased upon him,
that all Physicke reliefe was quite given
over: so that small was the hope of his
recovery, whose distresse, the kind King,
with the Mother Queen, grieved in

such wise to behold, as in short time it was hard to be judged which of the three endured most extreame. But God that in aduersity sends comfort, restored the Prince to some strength: belike receiving some comfort in his imaginations, and by his recovery, h. King and Queen were both so comforted, as in short time they were raised from their sick Cabinets, to frolike it amongst their noble Subjects, who joyed in nothing so much as in their healths. But how soone the Sun-shine of their happinesse was overshadowed with clouds: of comfortlesse care giueth me to recount, yet dare I not gain-say your Ladships request. The Prince recovered of his malady, made semblance of such content, that none but himselfe could witnesse by the least suspicion, his heart: discontent, yet oftentimes should I, being seldom from his company, sighing with remembrance of farre fetched sobs, heare him say; Proulesse Lady, would my love were as well known to thee as to mine own hart, thou doubtlesse wouldst then pity me who languish for thee, that are the only

Princesse on the earth, Excelling in all
vertues which beauty the honorable;
therreport of which hath fettered my
fancies to thee, that I protest to be
thine; or never mine owne: then loo-
king with a gasty looke about him, to
see if any overheard him, he would fall
into some other discourse, ever applau-
ding the rare perfections of his Mistresse
who was unknowne to all but only to
himselfe, and I, who from the first he ac-
quainted with the same: briefly Lady,
(for I weary you with my discourse),
the love of his Lady hath drawne him
from his Country, whose absence cau-
sed the Kings exile, and the Kings exile
the Queens death.

The Princesse hearing all these ex-
treams to grow from affection knowing
well her owne hearts discontent, with a
sigh from the deepest, which wring
teares from her heart, she said: Alas no-
ble Gentleman, whose joy so soon over-
whelmed, hath heaped so many cares
upon me, what folly was there in thee,
I wouldst not disclose thy love which
burn'd so vehemently: was I dame so base

that thou fearst thereby to ignoble thy
 issue, or of such high estate thou doubt-
 est to obtaine her, if either, by perswa-
 sions all griefs might have bin mittiga-
 ted of a Monarch, why thou by report
 deservest her, if a Beggar: thou mightst
 make her noble, what ere she were hea-
 ring of thy distresse, could she forbear
 to pittie thee? No, no, were her hart more
 harder then the Diamond, it could not
 chuse at the hearing thereof, but relent
 she, well worthy were she to be scorned
 of all Ladies, and never to be named a-
 mongst the number of women.

The Prince seeing the Princess in
 this pittifull humour, thought it good
 striking when the iron was hot, and tak-
 ing the opportunity, answer'd her
 thus: Is your Ladships censure such of
 hard hearted Ladies, and will not be
 intreated of him, whose love to you is
 no whit inferiour to the Prince Arma-
 rine, as himselfe would confesse were he
 present, and heard me recount the many
 griefes, wherewith love hath afflicted
 me: and might he be Iudge, would allow
 me recompence for my Service in love.

But

But Madam, if without offence I might demand this; say *Moderate*, the Princeesse of *Trebisand* were the Saint, unto who this unhappy Prince had vowed his deuotions, & that all the passions he hath endured, are for your love, would you vouchsafe him love in recompence thereof? The Princeesse driven to her shifts at this demand, could not tell what to answer, yet sharpening her wits (as women can doe) she said: *Moderate*, Love is not to be dallied with, as I have heard them say, which speak by experience; therefore I cannot directly answer thy question, but were I the Physician that could cure his malady, and had so good judgment of his affects as of mine owne, charity would I should minister unto his Disease, what effect soever the potion would worke, provided this, that he disclosed his griefe in time: mistake me not *Moderate*, and pardon me if I conceale what I would utter, my thoughts are mine owne. Truth Lady (and the Knight) neither was the same demanded to urge any thing more, then standeth with your good liking.

kinge yet for the Prince, this I say, were pittie he should die for love. So say J (quoth the Princess) for few men there be of that condition, and as seldome such a one seen, as multitude of blacke Swans. Your error is great, Madam (quoth the Knight) for many have beene with love, so overcome, that Kings have bin enforced to stoop to their Subjects, and the greatest Conquerours, whose valour many volumes record, by love compelled to forsake themselves, taking sundry shapes and many royles, to game the love of their Ladies. I speak now, Madam, for the Prince, whom I love well, and challenge your charity may be to him continued, for your love is the only Physick that must cure him, or else all other helpes are frivolous: in hope whereof, he breathes hanging life, all your gracious consent to his griefes, yielding to his desires, in whom it resteth to restore him banished to his regall dignities, who is the cause of his exile. Madam, the Duke hath caused him to conceale it, bearing the extremity of his passions with intolera-

ble pain, whose flames encrease by view-
ing your excellenc perfectiōs; The
want of whose grace, baleth him on to
desperatiō; nor able any longer to resist
Loves assaults, which with such hot A-
larumes assaile him, that longer he
cannot endure them. The Prigge hea-
ring her Knight plead for the Prince
with such earnestnesse, leaving his own
Sute, to draw her to love him of whom
her thoughts were least on, thought it
some policy of the Knight, which ima-
gined Love had vanquished her, swell-
ing with anger at these new imagina-
tions, her colour changed into so many
formes, & the least Child which had seen
the same, might easily have gotten her final
consent: those last uttered speeches
wrought. But doubting lest with Silence
it should be perceived, with a heart full
fraught with fury, she said; Deceitfull
wretch, unworthy of favour of a simplest
drudge, that by thy subtil practise hast
sought to insinuat thy selfe into my se-
crets, was it not false varlet, sufficient &
forbeare the punishing of thy own bold
writings: but no dry face in colourable
manners.

deceidest me with Tales of I know not
what. Have I ever graced thee since I
first saw thee, and requitest thou my fa-
vor thus, dallying with me as with thy
inferiour, or some of thy base Trulles?
No, no, use thy jest with such that can
better digest them; & from henceforth
be warned (and warned) take heed how
thou dare either by word or writing,
use any like motions; lest I acquaint the
World with thy impotent dealings, and
by death thou receive the guerdon of
thy ill: and so far as thou maist, for ne-
ver expect farther favour at my hands.

The Prince hearing this sentence
from her, whose tongue was
to pronounce his life or death, thought
it high time to speak for himself before
she departed; and saying her as she
would have gone, he humbly besought
her, not in displeasure to leave him, but
with patience endure what he could
say: which albeit she might hardly be
won to grant, yet her former affection
bushied choller in such wise, that he
had liberty to speak, saying,

Gracious Lady, that I offended you

Has

Excellence, whom of all Earthly creatures I most honour, I hartly sorrow for it, judge me not so impudent or senseless, to move matter without some reason, especially enduced thereunto by your excellent favour, and charitable pittie of the wretched estate of that unhappy Prince, who hath vowed to love your Grace to the death; and by granting him your love, you shall draw him from death, and thereby not only restore him, but still the hearts of many thousands with joy, which with teares continually lamenteth his losse, which is lost to them for ever, and shortly will be losse to himselfe & the whole world. Unhappy Prince; now why name I him Prince, whose miseries is more then the most wretched slave that liveth; who not able to endure the force of love, hath forsaken himselfe, to follow his owne affections, without knowledg of Father, King, or Subjects. Misse not Madam, at the strangenesse of the Tale I have to deliver, nor let it seeme incredible, that I am that unhappy *Armadus*, lawfull Heire of the *Cambrian* Crown, that Prince,

Prince, through who so many miseries
 is befallen his country, his Fathers care,
 and cause of his carefull Mothers untimely death, who fettered in Lovers
 hands, by report of thy peerlesse beauty
 and vertues, hath drawn me to take ha-
 bit of a Marchant, usurping the name
 of *Marianus*, the more unsuspected to
 attaine the sight of thee whom my heart
 so desired: who, if thou pittie me, live
 by thy love to doe thee honour, and
 without thee, may no longer enjoy this
 life, in pursuit of whose love, if I die, my
 Ghost among the rest of Lovers shall
 sing hymnes in laud of thy peerlesse
 beauty.

The Princesse as one in a trance, could
 not tell whether she heard him speak or
 dreamed, yet noting his countenance
 which shewed a troubled Spirit, tickled
 with a suddain joy, as women be proud
 in their Loves, that her love to *Marianus*
 was met with by the Prince, of whom her Fa-
 thers Gentilmen reported such honours,
 she said, *Marianus*, or how I shall call
 thee known, for thou hast filled my

As with a world of confused thoughts,
in recounting the strangeness of thy
fortunes, which I can hardly be drawn
to beleeve, nor is it possible that the
Prince *Armatius* could live in Court
of *Trepsont*, so long concealed, with-
out knowledge of some one, if I might
by reason be induced to beleeve y^e same
I would say more. Madam qd the Prince
howsoever I have disguised my selfe
hitherto, as loath to be dishonoured,
yet beleeve me in this, that I said no
more then is truth. Therefore if thou
couldst not love *Marianus*, being a Mar-
chant, for ignobling thy noble house,
yet as I am Prince of *Carmania*, vouch-
safe me thy liking, by whom thy honor
can no way be disparaged, but by ex-
changing love for love with him, ad-
vance thy honor farre higher. Say now
Madam, all needesse let apart can you
love?

The Princeesse, whose love was so still
though willingly she would have colo-
red the same, yet moved with a pittifull
desire to ease his griefe, which far sur-
passed, as also to ease her owne heart
which

which was not a little infected with the same Disease, their welfares depending both on her grant or deniall. After she had deliberated a while, fixing her hand in his, which she easily grasped, and leaning her head on his shoulder to cover the blushing of her Face, as ashamed of what she had to say, unto him, in revealing her owne griefe, she said.

Famous Prince, whom the world applaudeth, and our Courtiers of Trebisonde with wonder to admire, that I loved thee being *Marianus*, I cannot deny, and how many jarres I endured for thee, I omit: each particular, wringing tears from my hart, which how willing soever it was to have made the same knowne, modesty restrained, laying before me many wrongs offered in Ladies love, by such perjured Knights, as have protest with their tongues which their hearts never ment, wherby divers Ladies of honor have beene dishonoured, and sundry lost their lives (which considered) blame me not, if I rather chuse to dye, then passe the band of modesty to sin, as I seek thy love, or knowing my

griefe, to blame mine (yeeld) before I
heard thee avow on thine honour, what
thy letters imported. But gentle Prince,
that thou maist better beleieve what I
report, how much soever my heart hath
denied to reveale, perswade thee, if I lo-
ved thee being *Marians*, and a coun-
terfeit Marchant, assure you, I cannot
hate thee for that thou art *Armatius*,
(the one a Prince) the other an inferior,
of whose love were I assured, and that
his tongue and hart agreed in one, *Ar-
matius*, should be in love so requited, as
never any should have interest in *Ar-
matius* heart, but the peerlesse Prince
of *Carmania*. At uttering of which, tears
restrained her Speech, which the Prince
noted, and perceiving that she spoke
what her heart thought, he comforted
her thus.

Faint not Madam, neither sorrow for
those comfortable confessions bestow-
ed on a dying creature, whose favours
each haile him from the grave, where-
into he was like to have bin swallow-
ed, had not thy comfort reclaimed me,
no living, dyed for thy love, which

grace shall never be forgotten. And if
 you shall assure you, my faith and love
 is firme and honourable. I protest by
 that honour that ever the Germanian
 Prince hath regarded, that my love to
 the Princesse *Amoretta*, is no other but
 honorable, nor ever none hath had any
 interest in *Amoretta*, or ever shall, but
 the onely beautifull, and vertuous Prin-
 cesse *Amoretta*: and on that, take here
 my hand, and with my hand, the heart,
 love, and honour of a Prince. *Syritha*,
 lending an eare to this practise, hearing
 them so earnest, ⁷² to put them from
 their melancholy, took the word at ad-
 vantage, and coming suddenly to the
 said; Madam, as finishing of bargaines
 they shake hands, if there be any re-
 change between your Knight and you,
 you were best to take witnesse, if he
 disliking the match, he recant his word.
Syritha (qd. the Prince) your Lady
 beholding to thee for thy care (and
 your deliver, challenge it when you
 please. *Syritha* (qd. *Syritha*) I thank you,
 will please you remeber your promise
 and excuse. *Syritha* (qd. the Prince)

without my Lord the Prince his further
intreaty, I pardon all faults committed
against me, for confirmation of which I
get our Lawyer to draw an acquittance
generall from the beginning of the
world, and I will signe it.

Nay Madam (answered *Syrissus*) it were
an evill servant that will not take her
Mistresse word for a dozen or two of
stripes, which I am sure had beene the
most, and if they should light on my
ribs, might well grieve me, flay me they
could not, my heart is of more valour
then so. But Madam, shall *Sir Aramis*
marry the Princesse *Amorette*, that you
call thus your Lady the Princess, if that
be the bargaine, I leave me that is some
fire in the straw. And how then for the
Princesse? Nay Madam (qd. *Syrissus*) no-
thing, but I pray God give you much
joy, and make you happy in your love.
While they were thus pleasant, a Page
brought word, that divers Ladies were
come to visite the Princesse. Where
caused them, how loath soever, to
many sweet embracing and loving
kisses, betwene them interchangeably.

to give each other the farewell, parting
better content the they came together,
having unburthened their hearts of ma-
ny griefes, giving content to both, by
yeelding to Love, which vanquished
both, whom to their pleasing imagina-
tions I leave, (to recount) the Kings of
Trebisond and Hungary, their pastimes
in hunting.

CHAP. XIX.

How the Kings of Trebisond and Hun-
gary, hunted with great delight, and
what befall them, with a pleasant
discourse of a simple Country-man,
whom with his Mother, the two
Kings by chance met withall, with
the letters of the Clown to his love,
and complaint of his Mother, of
the wrong done her by a man of estate.

Now these Kings following
the Chace, or with guns
pleasants, as pastimes they
greatly delighted, were
wexed with the same, &
toyed with the extremity of heat, which
made

mada them choose some place under
shadow of the spreading trees to refresh
themselves, where they had not long re-
sted, but they were espied of an ancient
woman, the widow of a good Yeoman,
and her Son, who having workmen not
far from thence, were carrying the vi-
tuals. The poore aged woman having
seen (as she thought unseen) the Kings
doubting they were some of those rob-
bers, that haunted those Mountains, would
have shifted from them another way,
but were interrupted of the Kings, who
suddenly calling them, drave the booke
into such shaking feare, as they which
are overburthened with a Feaver. The
King who graciously regarded their ti-
morousnesse, comforted them with all
the favourable Speeches he could use,
protesting unto them, that in their
company they should receive no dis-
countenance, by none, if the King himselfe
were present, and therefore willed them
to set feare apart, and to tell them what
they were, the cause of their feare, and
their businesse. they told him the way.
These honourable speeches of the King

quidly uttered, comforted them, wherefore in such blunt manner as her bringing up required, she said;

Gentlemen, for so you seeme, if your inward conditions answer your outward habit (as many in this Age doth) whose garments might become men of great worth, if apparell may make a man worthy, yet divers times cover those Carcases, void either of worship, honesty, or other good condition. Pardon my harsh behaviour (gentle Sir) and blame me not for avoiding the way, experience hath taught me to eschew harms, who to my cost have dearly paid for my learning, having my goods spoiled at home, and my selfe endangered abroad and without offence may I speake it, by such, whose countenance and attire, might well have deceived them of more judgment then my selfe.

The King delighted with her plain Speeches, demanded where she dwelled, and whether she had a husband, or lived as a Widow? Oh Sir, if any Gentilnesse abide in you (qd she) urge me not to deliver a tale of such rude, as your questions

tions import. The remembrance of my
 passed pleasant life, when I call to mind,
 with the cares I am now combred with,
 many sundry wayes, are so displeasing
 unto my grieved heart, as I may not
 without many teares shed, recount the
 same. These words spoken in heavinesse
 noted of the King, made him more im-
 portunate to heare the rest, and therefore
 willed her, all feare set apart, to reveale
 unto him, what estate she lived in, and
 if any wrongs were offered her, he pro-
 tected by Oathes which might have him
 well beleaved, to remedy it, yea, if it
 were the King himselfe. The carefull
 Widow encouraged by these comforta-
 ble words, albeit she hoped of small re-
 liefe from him, partly to ease her hart, &
 a little to disgrace her adversary, which
 was mighty, all & reveng she could take
 thus said; Sir, that I may not seeme dis-
 courteous to you, whose courtesie offe-
 red, is more then I can any way deserve,
 but in prayer for your welfare, which
 pittieeth a poore Widdows estate, whose
 weale is y good of her poore fatherlesse
 Orphans, heare with pittie my case, consider
 there-

thereof, as you shall best please. Then
drying her eyes, which like gutters be-
dewed her cheeks, she said. Not far from
hence (gentle Sir) is my poore Cabinet,
where this fifty winters I have maintai-
ned the port of a poore woman, my
Husband in his life delighting in Ho-
pitality, and on his Death-bed, gave me
charge to doe the like, which I have ob-
served, hurting none, nor never deny-
ing any good to them that sought to
me. The needy I harbored, whom with
my bread and such Viands as God sent,
I have fed.

But now Sir (quod she) and therewith-
all, a deepe sigh witnesse of her heart
heavynesse, restrained her speeches, yet
after some pause, said; But now Sir, such
is the oppression of the covetous in au-
thority, that my living is taken from
me, and I with my Family, compelled
to seeke harbour where we can get it,
God the comfort of the distressed, pro-
vide not within three moneths for us,
longer we have not there to abide.

Tell me woman (quod she King) what
is he that thus injureth thee, and the

man.

manner how? and as I am a true Sub-
ject to the King, I will never leave thee
all thou art with justice revenged on
him. Oh Sir (quoth she) urge me no
more to that, for my adversary being
honourable and of account with the
King although the wrong I sustaine is
great, yet will he revenge himselfe on
me and mine, as my life will be the least
and last, such is his bloody mind, who
with neither conscience, nor thought
of any good, else after so many yeares
of peaceable possession of this Tenney
rent, in name of my Husbands An-
cestry, as our evidence doth specifye, he
would not thus extreemly deale with
those whom charity would he should
comfort; but such is his cruelty, who
ought to be courteous, that his covet-
ousnesse is never satisfied, haling all
from the poore, and probring none, but
himselfe, his Children, or Servants, who
ape the benefit of many mens labors,
what Suite passeth, but he must
have of? Or what will the King deny,
but he will grant? Lamentable is it to
see the complaints of the Commons,

of all estates, how in secret they measure: Nay, not onely against him, but I may say, by others reports, this Kings name is called in question of many, all proceeding of this canker of men, who guiding all, abuse all. The Souldier serving for his Countries honour wanteth his pay, which causeth him fall to robbery, and other unlawful exercises. The Farmer, Grasier, and such, that live by the benefit of the Tillage, feeding Cattell, and other labours, have their Cattell taken, their Corne, and what they enjoy, and driven to seeke their mony by long Sutes, and in the end glad to bestow the one half to be assured of the other, yet dare not complaine, how great soever the oppression be.

Thus Sir, to satisfie you, I have spoken the truth what I have heard, partly that I know, which I and many more may lament, but cannot remedy it. But Sir, what I have spoken, I beseech you will conceale, for if you be true to him, whom I dare not name, yet you can imagine. If under your fauour

lurk deceit, and that you have sisted me
to betray me to his cruelty, such ill be-
fall thee, as I wish him, whom I have
cause to curse, and others with me,
whom he hath likewise wronged. But
had the King knowledge how he useth
his Subjects, especially his Tenants
(who is our good Landlord) and thus
many years hath been, he would redresse
it; but that he having the charge of all,
hath received a great fine to thrust me
from my right, which God remedy
and grant our King to understand his
gynny. Amen (saith the King)
It is possible that he (whom I
know) the King hath loved so deere,
and advanced to such honour, should
seek his dishonour in so base manner?
Well good woman (saith the King) that
thou shalt know I favour thy cause,
and sorrow for the wrongs offered the
Commons, I will informe the King
what I have heard, and thou shalt have
justice, else never let me live. Therefore
in three dayes hence thou faile not to
come to the Court, unto the Kings Porter
and deliver this Signet, who upō sight thereof

shall bring thee to my presence, in the meane time, comfort thy selfe, and faile not to meet me at the appointed time. The aged Widow, whose heart Sorrow and feare had over-burthened, doubting lest her large Speeches should have caused her greater trouble, was by the King comforted, whom she had no knowledge of, yet prayed God to preserve him, in peace and much happiness, and so would have departed. But the King melancholy at these Vreports, willed her to stay, for that he would have some Speech with her Son, which seemed very simple, shewing by his demeanour how he had bin brought up. Wherefore to delight him, and to drive those melancholy dumps away, he questioned him of his years and being brought up, and how he lived, whether a Bachelor, or married, which questions, were answered with such simplenesse, as greatly delighted the King.

As the Kings were thus pleasantly discoursing with him, it fortuned the King of Trebisona to espy a paper in his bosome, which, for he feared by

Jack

Inckhorne at his girdle, to be a Clark, perswaded themselves, that if it were not some reckoning or remembrance, it was some worthy worke, which made the King require a sight thereof, which how loath soever he leerned, making often denials, it might not be accepted: after many perswasions, he pulled the same out, which was folded in the curiousest manner, eate, cornered, and subscribed.

Why how now friend: this is suspicious, that in such secret manner (quoth the King) you carry Letters, refusing to shew them, when they are required: it may be treason against y^e state, therefore I will by your leave see it. Oh Gentleman (quoth he youngling) in his choyse manner, if you can, I pray you let it alone, or at least, if you read it, let not my Mother heare. For my life (quoth the King) it is some foule stuffe, and matter worth the spair, wherefore tearing the Seale, which was as broad as a shilling, of the best blacke waxe the Coffer would bestow on him, they read the Contents thus:

To the joy of Hobbins, peerlesse Mop-
sa, thy hearty Lover greeteth
thee.

Hony Mopla, more sweeter then the
finest Sugar, or the spiced Wine,
sold for 18. pence the quart, of thy be-
mosty being little, I say little, good
needs no fight, for such are thy vertues,
that they shine over the whole Parise,
like the Moone in her Eclipse: Cu-
pine, I applaud thy dignities, by whose
power my heart hath sworne love in a
frailty to thee, for which good turne, and
charitie shall the whole world pay my
love, I now to my Christmas day during
the length of my life, am to carry to thy
Chappell, two halfe penny white Linen,
and a pot of the best Ale, with the appen-
tment, and so verifie my word to thee.
I swear by my Loves hand, so white as
the bearded Rye leafe, under ten nails, I
is to give me a faire great of silver in re-
compence of which, as thou art a God,
thou wilt cause Mopla, who like a smel-
ling wench hath stolen my heart to joyne

issue with me, and love me with so good
 a zeale as I love her, which I may sweet-
 ly say, yea, and sweare it too, is with so
 good a heart as ere I plaid the Krevant
 from Schoole. Oh Mopla, Be it knowne
 unto thee by these presents, the audite-
 ment of my heart roote, and the super-
 scription of my shaking hand, that thou
 art the onely joy and delight of thy lo-
 ving Hobbinoe, who plungeth like a
 Pack horse in the Adire over head and
 eares for thee, sowing to the gulphs of
 hearts grieve, as a Sower face in the
 Arjue Tub : Tea, like as fire in the
 Brewers fornace I burne, and all for
 thee. O Mopla; as thou art handsome and
 well-favoured, so be thou pitifull, and
 pull a handfull of cold love from thy
 heart; to quench the flame, which like
 the great Hill that burneth consumeth
 me, so much that as many as come within
 smell of me; stepping their noses for
 feare of infection, with a troubled voice
 say, Flye on the filthy wretch, the cause
 of it : Thy love my deare, is the onely
 cause ; Thou art my Jewell, my Pearle,
 my Dymond, without thy love,

nothing can be pleasing vnto Hobbinot,
 by yeelding therof a grant with consent
 and good liking, thou unburthenest my
 heart of sorrow, as one should vntie a
 Ship, but if thou deny, bestowing the
 same on some Clowne, my seruant, and
 nothing worthy to enjoy thee so. Mar-
 melade a Lasse, my branding blade shall
 brouch my side in such manner, that my
 puddings forsaking their habitation, my
 belly shall be no more desirous of the good
 white-pot and Bacon, wherewith it hath
 bene so often filled. If thou be pittifull
 Mopla? save the life of a loving Bat-
 cheler, and suddainly let me know thy
 mind, or else farewell to thee, farewell
 to the world, yeay, Adue to all the brave
 lusty gallant Tounsh of our Parishes: to
 whom so often I have led the Morise, to
 my eternall rebuke? amongst all the
 wenches, whose secret voyces might be
 often heard to whisper these words of
 great comfort. (O excellent Hobbinot.) To all these, and more then
 many will giue me leave to recount,
 farewell.

By Ioue Juniper I vow, a fornicat

ill not live without thee, but my body
dying for thee, shall be by our Batche-
lers raggedly intombe, where Loves
Champions are laid, and dead blood

To furnish my Funerall, I bestowed my
fallow Cow given me by that good old
woman my Grandam, my faire suite of
Russet, whereon I bestowed xiii. pence in
dozen lace, made to delight thee; I be-
stow upon thy Brother Nicke, let him
weare it for my sake, that every Holi-
day he puts it on, thou maist remember
me whom thou hast cast away, breaking
out in some place thy sorrow for the
same, that the Gods of Love revenge
not my death, as on that troubleffe Gre-
tilda, for her Knights Trough, for more
true love I beene to thee, then the Ivis
to the Oake, or the meate (within) to the
Egge shell. And the more my truth, the
greater thy torment, if Clarks sayings
may be believed (who can tell) for they
were all wise men, I say no more, because
I cannot.

But I wish to dye, unlessc thou grant,
Therefore my Wench, looke not scant,

For if thou dost, it may thee grieve,
 When I am dead, that thou shouldst live
 To hear the Wench, which will say,
 Mopsa hath slaine her Hobbinay.
 Thus will thy name, a by word be,
 Amongst bad and good of each degree.
 Then kill not him so cruelly,
 That for thy sake hath sworne to dye.

Thine constant till Doomes day,
 Faithfull Hobbinot.

The King greatly pleased with this invention, for that it overcame his melancholy, willed him to say, whether he were so far in love as he professe? Am I, quoth Hobbinot (I that I am) and how and I be, doe you know Mopsa that you demand such questions? Or will you knowing my griefe, perswade her from my love? The King hearing him so earnest, gave the more credit to his words, willing him to keepe the matter secret to himselfe, and to come with his Mother to the Court, at his time appointed, against which, he had by such secret espials as he procured, leaped

the truth of this Noble man, and his injurious dealings, which like a just Prince, he requited with death: and caused a Proclamation to be made, that whosoever they were, which could make proofe of their wrongs, should come by a day prefixed, where their cause should be heard, and restitution made, which in such sort was accomplished that his Lands, Leases, Plate, and Jewels, were distributed to the wronged. The Widow who first gave notice thereof, the King enriched with greater possessions to maintaine her Hospitality, and *Hob- biner*, for that his *Adops*, should not for want of wealth refuse him, he bounti- fully rewarded, so that every one was pleased, and returned content to their Homes.



CHAP. XXI.

*How the King of Trebisond furnished
the Hungarian King with forces to
recover againe his Kingdome,
which, Loves Heroicke Champion,
is Generall, with their Adventures
at Sea, and honourable Conquests by
Land, with their victories,*



NOW Gentiles, the History
shall shew you how
Marmoricus King of
Hungary expected the
aid of Trebisond for re-
storing him to his Kingdome, which
promise the King so regarded, that in
short time, through the diligence of
these Captaines to whom the charge
thereof was committed, the number ap-
pointed was furnished, with shipping,
munitions, and victuals, for the Army,
of whom the Trebisondia King took
the Muster, appointing their Leaders.
The chiefe (by name of Generall) for
the Service, was the Heroick Champion
who

who was urged unto it by the two Kings, in such manner, that no excuse nor delayes which he could make, might be accepted, unlesse he should by his too much refusall, purchase the name of Coward: this choice greatly disliked the Knight, whose wars in Love, had but newly begun to take successe, who scarcely assured of the Princesse, although her promised Faith might put him in comfort, yet weighing the instability of a their Sexe, he doubted lest his absence might draw her to that which he would heedfully regard being present. The tydings of her Fathers election, made of her love for generall, as Noveltries are rise and flye with swift wings, came unto the hearing of the Princesse, unto whom if they were irksome, suppose you that know how grievous the parting of two faithfull Lovers are, who having her only felicity in contemplating of her beloved *Armasius*, their joyes but now in the blossomes, was so nipt in the Spring, as care banished all future happinesse, and sorrow began to claime her wonted place

place in both, but especially the Princesse who framed of the weaker mould, heaviness had taken the more impression in her, so that forsaking all company her chiefest delight was to be solitary, where she might with deepe sighes and many brinish teares, unburthen her overcharged heart, curling bitterly the cause, and causer of separating her love. In this melancholy uttering such speech of despaire, as though she saw the dreadfull Messenger Death, already seized upon the valiant Knight. The Knight who could take as little rest, as his Lady pleasure, could find content in no place, untill he came to the Princesse Lodging, whom he found in this passion, which was more grievous then all the rest, her blubbred Eyes pressing blood from his heart, beholding her in that plight, whose happy content was his onely joy. But how cumbersome so ever it was unto him, with Wilsdome he advisedly weighed, that care must be comforted in time, lest taking deepe roote, they will consume the heart Subject unto it.

There

Therefore after many kind perswasions used, he had belied her, the honour of the place assigned him, and what infamy would redound unto him refusing it, with the dishonour of him, and shame to his Progeny for ever, the cause being right, and the action of her Princely Father so charitable, whereon the wellfare of a whole Kindome consisted.

The Princess whom Gijose had neare overcome, hearing her beloved speak so honourably, and well considering it was greatly to his infamy, to deny her Father, though hardly won to patience, yet armed with hope of his valour and fortunate successe in his journey, reason and Wisdome subduing Griefe and Sorrow, she granteth her consent, heartily praying for his safe and suddaine returne, to his eternall honour, and encreasing of their Hearts content.

Time that stayeth not, causeth these Princes to part, *Marianus* to give directions for his journey, his provision being all so make, but such care had he of

the same, as he was suddenly provided
of all needfull things, expecting a faire
wind for imbarquing his Companies,
which God sent as they desired, when
each one taking leave of their Friends,
with many a loath departing farewell,
he betooke himselfe to the mercy of the
Waves, who by his goodnesse, that
commandeth and governeth all things,
favoured them with so happy a Gale,
that in short time they might descry
the high Land of Egypt; which be-
ing by his skilfull Pilots knowne, they
strooke their Sailes to Hull, untill a
generall Counsell was called, where
every man had liberty to deliver his
advise for the benefit of the Action.
Where after long debating, and each
perill advisedly weighed, it was deter-
mined, the Fleet should be put againe
into the Sea, lest they being a huge
number should be descryed, and their
intent thereby made frustrate. To bring
their purpose to better effect, a Frygate
was slenderly manned to avoid suspic-
on, who in the Night rowed hard
board the shore, with Commission to
take

take what ere he were they could first lay hold off, that they might be the rather advertised of the state of the country, and where the King was.

This devile sortred to such effect, that through the great diligence of the Lord *Diphilus*, who was appointed for the same, as one desirous to gaine honour, by dawning of the day they recovered a Rocks, which opened with one of their principall Ports; under which unseen, they might shelter themselves, and yet have sight of each shallop, whether he were fisher or other, that came or went. Long had they not laine expecting of their desire: but Fortune who favoured their enterprise, discovered unto them a Galley bound for *Babylon*, freighted with many passengers of honour, and exceeding rich, with Plate, Mony and Jewels. This Galley first descried, halfe dismayed the company, who feared she had some Man at ~~the~~ sent of purpose to surprize them, so that each one had greater desire to be gone againe, then to attempt any thing against them. But

in extremitie is the Noble mind best
 tryed, as the Lord *Diphilus* in this, who
 seeing the cowardize of such base com-
 panions, first by faire perswasions en-
 couraged them to the attempt, shewing
 in his countenance his resolution, and
 arming them with hope of victory, not
 omitting the reward of so honourable
 an action, which if they escaped with
 victory being the beginning of their
 enterprize, deserved more to be recom-
 penced then all therest. To give you
 courage my hearts (quoth he) I say now
 to you, goe, but follow me your Leader,
 who will eyther win her, or lose my
 life in so good a cause. But these Spee-
 ches with those dauidards prevailed not
 at all, who seeing the match unequal,
 cryed still to be gone, but *Diphilus*
 who weighed his honour farre above all,
 moved with great impatience at their
 deniall, with his Rapier drawne came
 among them, reviling them with con-
 temptuous Speeches, and protesting what
 he were that should in the least fore-
 ster by word or countenance, make
 them to returne, should with his own
 hand

hand be murdered, and so long as he might breath, no faint hearted villaine should dishonour him, who came to gaine honour. Therefore sweet bloods (quoth he) take courage and feare not, death with honour, is to be valued more then life, with a Kingdome's possession, who so followeth me, shall find me ever his friend, and what ere I possesse, shall have interest in it. The company how loath soever they were to be won to so hard an adventure, yet seeing the Noble man so resolute, thought it bootlesse to refuse him, or to make semblant of dislike, holding it more Wisdome to keepe his honourable friendship by their forward adventuring, then procure his envie by their cowardise, and seeing it high time to resolve, the Gallie approaching them neare, they cryed to protect, and they would all follow him, Deshaie pleased with their willingness, had scarce leisure to give directions for the fight before the Gallie came within hailing, whose force being such and so well manord as she was, made small account of the Frygat, who

who although they halled many times
yet making as if they heard not, bore
up with them, and valiantly witho-
ut words, entered her in the Prow, putting
them from their Ordinance, where they
within board with their Pistols, Sem-
inars, and other needfull weapons, val-
iantly behaved themselves, *Diphilus*
crying still courage, courage, *Hungary*,
so long that in short time the *Cavilers*
overs all flowed, and his company leav-
ing his Frygt entered all the Galley,
as lawfull Prize to be shared amongst
them. The Noble *Diphilus* having en-
ded the fight, he kindly with words of
favour and promise of liberty, with
great reward to the slaves, urged them
to apply their labour, which with
willing hearts accomplished his request,
that in short time they had fought
their Fleet, and bore with them
they might, which being deferred, they
could not imagine whether the *Galley*
were friend or no, wherefore the *Ge-*
nerall esd void petill, as *Widome* was
Valour is requisite, doubting that
being or other mischief, they might

annoy them, he called by his flagge of
 Counsell, the commanders of each ship,
 Frygat and Galley, advising them to
 take great regard, how they suffered
 the Galley to boord them. By that time
 the whole Fleet was prepared in Squa-
 drons, rowing fye and fye warlike and
 brave. *Diphilus* came up with them,
 when the Fleet halted them, they espied
 his owne colours, advanced on the
 Poope, and another Ensigne hanging
 under her sterne, which sight gave them
 great cause of joy, to signifie their
 gladness for his successe, each ship in
 the for ward with their Ordnance and
 small shot, according to the manner of
 the Sea, bad him welcome. In which
 Tryumph, unhappily with a scower
 which negligently was shot from a Har-
 gubuz, was the Noble *Diphilus* wound-
 ed, to the great grieve of all the Nos-
 bles. The Generall having understan-
 ding thereof, in his shalop boorded him
 with all the speed he might, carrying
 with him his owne Surgeon, and such
 as professed Physicke, doubting the
 Griefe to be more dangerous, then it
 pro-

proved, whereof, albeit the report was first offensive to him, yet was comforted in this comfort, the wound not mortall, they regarding it as nothing, when the Generall had carefully seen the wound searched and drest, enquiring what they were which he had taken, he caused all the chiefe of them to be called unto him who on their examinations would confesse little, which forced the Generall to put one of the inferiours, attendant on *Phydawia*, the *Egyptian* King's Brother, to be tortured, who forced with the cruelty thereof, confessed what they were, and how their going for *Babylon* was to entreat a peace with the Emperour, who as they were informed, levied a power to subvert their Country, in revenge of the wrong offered *Timoclea* sister to the *Hungarian* King, slaine in a battell fought at Sea, by the *Egyptian* King. This newes was no sooner revealed then welcome, for hereby they were assured of an expected friend, yet enquired the Generall, whether their King had married the Princesse *Timoclea*, or no, and where he lived?

quoth

quoth the *Egyptian*, after the victory obtained, wherein the noble *Adarmorians* perished, the King my Master, furnished for such an attempt, without further stay or suffering them to gather head, which he was sure they would doe, hearing of their Kings ill successe to prevent which, he framed his course thither, where they suddenly arrived, and by their power and policy, subdued the chiefeft of the Nobility.

ving them sure, they easily a time overcame the rest, w by generall voyces (thou their liking, Crowned Kill ry. How he punished t omit, embracing them, their places them far un honour and reputation, Gentleman or other of ac yeth in great servitude as to be relieved with needf apparell, at their hands w selves have often fed.

The Princesse for all the partw he can use, he cannot in love obtain, hush he used the good Lady,
 cruselly

cruelly than I would willingly report,
 the strangeness of her tortures being
 such, as few but doe greatly pittie.
 And now, as our last Poets imparted
 untous, he hath appointed a time
 wherein she must resolutely answer him
 to his content, or end her life in fire.
 The which cruelty to her used, reported
 by Marchants of *Babylon*, with the
 vertues of the Princeesse, and comming
 to the Emperours eares, being now in
 the prime of his yeares, either of pol-

glity to release her, or wh
 her his Lady and Wife,
 but he hath required her a
 exceeding great love unto
 King will nor grant un-
 de of great despight hath
 in such manner, as he
 ng, hath with fire and
 him, who being a Prince
 t might and force, our Ne-
 Egypt have thought good
 syne with favourable shew
 ship, then abide the extremity
 as fury, Los Six (quoth he) thus have I
 satisfied your request, which is all I can

doe. And for the same quoth the Knight, receive thy liberty, with what other favour J may doe thee.

These newes was as pleasing to the *Heroicke Champion*, as if he had beene possessed of the Crowne, and having such advantage, holding it small policy to lose any time, comforting *Diphilus*, committing the charge of his prisoners unto his good regard, he hasteneth to his owne ship, where, unto *Marmori* King of Hungary, he recounted what he had heard, desiring that order might be presently taken, whereby the Enemy might be surprized at unawares, so might they finish their intents with lesse danger and more honour, on which they agreeing, they summoned their chieft, unto whom, the Knight recounted what the *Egyptian* had declared, beseeching the King whose cause it was, to speake his mind: then desired to give their advice, what they thought was best to be done, for accomplishing of their desires, and planting the King in his owne Countrey.

These questions propounded, each

L

par-

particular perill, with each advantage and occasion which offered good successe was throughly debated, when they had each one delivered their mind, *Marianus*, whose honour was now in the Ballance, as one that desired no worldly possessions so much as the reputation with his Mistresse and the King, said Noble Gentlemen, you have all like resolute, brave & hardy men at Armes shewed in your speeches the desire you have to doe this Noble King that service for which we come, if therefore you well encline your eares to my opinion among the rest, I shall acknowledge my selfe greatly favored by you. The whole company which by curtesie was drawn to his love, was easily won to this request, and willed him say on, which he did in this manner.

My Noble Lords, and friends, in Armes, touching these motions made for our proceedings, it hath bene by the Egyptian reported, whom we credit, the King is in possession of *Egiptus*, which Crown, we know all,

both dishonourably usurpe. The Princesse, she in such extreame, that by his cruell censure is not long to live, vnlesse against her will she grant to love him, who is loathsome in her eyes. To prevent which, it behoveth vs to search the best meane that we can, and for that every one hath given his censure, this I may advise, that having these Nobles in our possession, in whom consisteth the strength of his Realme, our company being lusty and strong, we will change their confines, where finding place and opportunity, we may surprize them at vnawares, who being abdued, his force shall be the more impaired. That done, we will with all convenient speed passe for *Hungaria* where I doubt not but to come before the time limited the Princesse for her answer, and to reskew her, delivering the possession of the Crown, into the King, and. The Knight having said, presently it was confirmed, and each Captaine departed to his charge according to directions given entered the confines of *Egypt*, where they wrought

by such policy and directions of *Levi*
Heroske Champion, that they landed
 in the dead of the Night, & the greatest
 part of their Armies, marching in war-
 like order towards the City of *Me-
 rhinna*, where the King keeps his chief
 Court, and where their greatest force
 was. But before they could recover the
 Walls, or come to view the same for any
 advantage, they were descryed, and the
 Gates shut, against whom the Citizens
 made such power as they could for
 their defence, which unexpected of the
 Knight, caused him to stay untill him-
 selfe went to know their pleasures and
 to deliver his own intent. And mount-
 ing himselfe, onely accompanied with
 his Herald and one Trumpet he came
 before the Walls, summoning them to
 parley, which was answered againe by
 another Trumpet, and such of the No-
 bility as was within, shewed themselves
 unto him, demanding a cause of his
 coming in Armes to disturbe their
 Dominions, and the Subjects to the
 King.

Nobles of *Egypt*, answered *Levi*

Heroske

Heroicke Champion, Marmoricus
lawfull King of Hungary, whose Crown
your King *Mimalcon* unjustly with-
holderh, preserved by Heavens power
for your Scourge, and to revenge the
blood of those Innocents slaine by your
cruelty, is come with fire and Sword to
require his right, which if you accept,
and will deliver, he sends you by me
mercy, if you deny and doe not surren-
der your Crowne of *Egypt*, with all
the regalties, honours, priviledges and
customs thereunto belonging, and be-
come his faithfull Subjects and Liege-
men, you shall all perish with the sword
and your Country flaming with fire,
shall be overbrowne, in such manner,
that in short time to come, there shall
be nothing found but the ruines of
your gorgeous Palaces, and stately Ci-
ties, this hath he vowed by the honour
of his name: therefore choose like wa-
y Champions, and let me know your
wills, for no detraction shall be un-
d.

The *Egyptian* Peers, which heard
the name of *Marmoricus*, whom they

by such policy and directions of *Lewys*
Herdscke Champion, that they landed
 in the dead of the Night, & the greater
 part of their Armies, marching in war-
 like order towards the City of *M-
 rhinna*, where the King keeps his chief
 Court, and where their greatest force
 was. But before they could recover the
 Walls, or come to view the same for any
 advantage, they were descryed, and the
 Gates shut, against whom the Citizens
 made such power as they could for
 their defence, which unexpected of the
 Knight, caused him to stay untill him-
 selfe went to know their pleasures and
 to deliver his own intent. And mount-
 ing himselfe, onely accompanied with
 his Herald and one Trumpet he came
 before the Walls, summoning them to
 parley, which was answered againe by
 another Trumpet, and such of the No-
 bility as was within, shewed themselves
 unto him, demanding a cause of his
 coming in Armes to disturbe their
 Dominions, and the Subjects to the
 King.

Nobles of *Egypt*, answered *Lewys*

Herdscke

Heroicke Champion, Marmoricus
lawfull King of Hungary, whose Crown
your King *Almaleon* unjustly with-
holdeth, preserved by Heavens power
for your Scourge, and to revenge the
blood of those Innocents slaine by your
cruelty, is come with fire and Sword to
require his right, which if you accept,
and will deliver, he sends you by me
mercy, if you deny and doe not surren-
der your Crowne of *Egypt*, with all
the regalties, honours, priviledges and
customs thereunto belonging, and be-
come his faithfull Subjects and Liege-
men, you shall all perish with the sword
and your Country flaming with fire,
shall be overhrowne, in such manner,
that in short time to come, there shall
be nothing found but the ruines of
your gorgeous Palaces, and stately Ci-
ties, this hath he vowed by the honour
of his name: therefore choose like wa-
y Champions, and let me know your
wills, for no detraction shall be u-
sed.

The *Egyptian* King, which heard
the name of *Marmoricus*, whose they

long silence supposed dead, were surprized with a suddaine feare, in such manner as their senses were deprived and they rested like men in Extasie, fearing the revenge of him, whom they did all know was by their King highly wronged, yet shewing the Nobility of their minds, shaking off feare, they said: Sir Knight, thy vnlooked for message is such as we know not suddenly how to answer, neither will we, like fainehearted Peasants, derogate from our noble Ancestors, the honour they long maintained, with Cowardile to deliver that, which Nature and fidelity vrgeth vs to defend, our lives we esteeme as they are, vaine and every day subject to casualties and death, nor doe we enjoy that small time given vs, but onely for our Common-weale, and benefit of our country, being pillar on whom the State dependeth: You have daftard like waited opportunity to take vs at advantage, our King nor present, whose right & interest we are sworn to maintain. Therefore to *Marmoricus* say: That as we serve our King, and live by his
Grace

Grace, we will with our dearest blood withstand the invasion of any forraign Prince whatsoever. If our King, as you allege, have offered wrong vnto him, let him revenge him on him, and seek his amends where he may get it, for other entertainment let him not looke for here.

Loves Heroick Champion hearing their resolution, greatly commended their valour, and loyalty to their Sovereigne, who seeing their truth pittied them, and wished all men so faithfull minds: yet how well soever he liked their answer, their intents were to be considered, who came with more resolution, then to be wonne with faire words, and therefore returned with all haste to the Campe, where to the King hee briefly delivered the summe of their answer, which the King tooke no pleasure to heare, rather desiring their submission by curtesie, then the effusion of blood: yet not to pittie them in such manner, to give over the advantage he had: wherefore that they might be assured of his

resolution, which came to conquer, from his usurping Foe, taking his Army which was led by the appointed General, he brought them before the city, unto whom they gave many sharp and fierce Alarums, and were valiantly repulsed, not without great losse of either part. Thus continued the Assault long and dreadfull, till *Marianus* noting the time of the *Princesse Timoteas* death to draw neare, when either she must be rescued, or dye that extreme death assigned, he determined to put all upon Fortune, to see the end, and not longer to prolong the time. And calling those whose valor he had most assurance of, he made knowne unto them his intent, requiring their company, whereunto small perswasions served, desirous to be partners with him in his actions, which were in all things very honourable. The Knight assured of his friends and followers in this action, gave direction to all Captaines at the going downe of the Sun, to be ready furnished with their companies to bid the enemy battell, doing their best before that place where

their chiefe force was, in the mean time he with his accomplices would assault some other part which was of lesse ability to defend.

Thus these Noble Gentlemen, having determined to win the horse or lose the Saddle, neglected no time, that against the appointed houre, each man in his place was readily furnished, and most valiantly attempted with all warlike Ensignes to enter the city, battering, scaling, and each severall wayes searching, that policy or valour would permit, to bring the City to ruine, and vanquish the enemy, which was most nobly defended with great courage, and much losse of either part. While they were at their hardy fight on either part, it is not to be forgotten, how *Loves Heroicke Champion* with his associates, seeking opportunity, by chance lighted on the side of an old wall, which being somewhat decayed, they by industry of their hands and painfull toyle, easily made the breach such, that they entered at pleasure, &c passing through streets which led to the assaulted Gate, molest.

ed no man untill they came thither, where entring the same, flew the watch, and opened the Gate, advancing the *Trebisondia* Kings Colours on the top thereof, crying ever in their way as they passed, *Hungary, Hungary.*

This cry amazed the Citizens, and armed the *Trebisondians*, to the hotter attempt, who entred to the rest, & with such courage bare them, that they had soone vanquished the defendants, who to save their lives, had betaken themselves to their Churches, as places of Sanctuary, from whence they sent their wives & infants all disrobed, to search the King, and in their names to require his pardon, such diligence made the modest *Matrones*, that they were brought by *Marianus* to the King, where prostrating themselves at his feet, their faces bedewed with tears, they most humbly besought him to take compassion on them, their husbands, and children, that as he was a Conquerour, so with favour to use the glory of his victory, the poore Subjects might not have cause to complaine them of his cruelty.

who had done nothing blams-worthy,
 but as true Subjects to their Sovereign.
 The King, whose hart was moved with
 pity at their Sute, gently tooke them
 up, measuring their calamity by his
 owne misfortunes, and be thought him
 of their fidelity, yet pretending a shew
 of unkindnesse, for refusing his mercy
 proffered them by his noble Generall,
 he would not be intreated suddainly to
 grant them life, which the Noble *Mari-
 anus* noted, and like himselfe, waying
 their faith to their Prince, and weale of
 their country, which with their lives
 they had sought to maintaine, he was
 content to remit their fault, and not
 onely to pardon their lives, but restore
 them to all former liberties, and places
 of honour, without any disparagement
 to their royalty, so that they would ac-
 knowledge him their Sovereign, and be
 as faithfull to him and his, as they had
 shewed themselves to that usurper his e-
 nemy. This choyse at first seemed hard,
 yet of two evils the least is to be cho-
 sen, as these Nobles of *Egypt*, who see-
 ing their lives, Wives, Children, and
 whate

what they posselt, to be in the hands of
 strangers, whom they could not with-
 stand, making a vertue of necessity, were
 the rather won to yeeld themselves unto
 the Kings pleasure, at the intercession
 of their Wives, whose teares shed in a-
 bundance, moved them to ruth, in such
 wise, that subjecting on these conditions
 to his Excellence, they proclaimed him
 King of *Hungary* & *Egypt*, swearing
 fealty unto him, and delivering Ho-
 stages for their loyalty. This done, the
 King with generall consent crowned,
 the Commons gan conceive an especiall
 hope of his honourable love to them,
 whose kindnesse was such, that having
 the City, and whole Kingdome at his
 pleasure, would not suffer his Souldiers
 to imbeasell or purloyn in any sort, but
 rather make choyce to reward the Mer-
 cenary men out of his owne Treasury,
 which honourable beginning, gained
 their especiall liking: when order was
 taken for the government of the State
Marianus, who was mindfull of the
 Princesse *Timoclea*, halld the King
 for *Hungary*, of putting him in mind

what dangers the good Lady was likely
to abide, if she consented not to the King,
who was more cruell then courteous,
wherefore taking their pledges, he left
the noble *Diphilus* his *Viceroy*, to
take the government upon him in his
absence, and with the next favourable
wind, they set Saile for *Hungary*, where
to their good successe was leave them,
to tell you more of *Ottoman* the Hea-
then Prince, who was in the *Princessse*
Amoretta her custody.

CHAP. XXII.

Now the Emperor of *Constantinople*
was most grievously offended with his
Son for his ill successe, and by per-
suasions of his Nobles sendeth his
ransome, and other great gifts to the
Princessse Amoretta, with the King
of *Hungary*, and the powers of *Trebi-*
sond, arriving in *Hungary*. The
freeing of the Prince from the U-
surper, and happy obtaining of his
Kingdome.

The mighty Emperour of *Constanti-*
nople, understanding the ill successe

of his Son, with the great slaughter of his men, was moved at the first to such choller, that he had determined for ever to abandon his Son, and never to have known or regarded him, but being perswaded by his Nobility which tenderly loved the Prince, he was at length by their motions won to conceive, how unstable Fortunes chances are, and how victories sometimes happen as well to the coward, as the valiant: not forgetting to urge unto him, how dishonourable it were for a Prince to leave the meanest Subject he had at such an exigent, that should adventure his life in his service, much more was his Majesty bound by nature's lawes to relieve his Son, and not suffer him as one forsaken to remain in the hands of his Enemies: upon which motion of his *Bastard*, the King caused two Gallies to be rigged and furnished, appointing of his chiefest Nobles two, for that voyage of *Treviso*, as well to advertise him of his Sons welfare, which he favoured, as also to agree upon the Summe of his Ransom: All things furnished for the voyage.

voyage, the *Bashawes* having taken leave of the Emperour, and the rest of their friends, favoured with a happy Gale; they shortly arrived in *Trebisond*; of whose arrivall, the King by his Messengers was advertised: who being of nature most honourable and courteous in behaviour, caused a sumptuous stayne of Courtiers, with all the honorable manner they could, to receive them at their Port of landing, taking like order in all Lodgings, and places of rest, his Officers at his charge to attend them, which in such exquisite manner was performed, as the *Bashawes* with their retinue admired their entertainment.

Thus by easie journeyes they came to the Court, where the King with the Princesse, gave them many welcomes, enquiring kindly after the good health of the renowned Emperour their Master, whom he maligned no whit at all, how hardly soever he had measured his friendship with him. When the King and these Nobles had spent some time in discoursing, they enquired of

of the welfare of their Prince *Ottoman*, whom the King caused to be sought, and brought to their presence, before whom they bowed themselves in all humbleness, as to the Sonne of their Sovereign, whom he againe, with all kindnesse imbraced, passing the time with much pleasure, joying in the welfare of his friends. The King doing them all the honour that could be devised, passing the time with such recreation & gentle sports, as the Country afforded: at length a summe of mony for the Princes ransome was agreed vpon to their content, for that it was reasonable, & the conditions honorable, which obtained their victualls by the King was receaved, & all necessities at his charges purveyed, in such manner, and with so much bounty, as they had great cause to report honorably of the King.

Long had they not tarried, but a gale of winde pleasant and favourable, presented it selfe, which good time they neglected not, but taking leave of the King, their Prince, and Princess *Amatilla*, who accompanied them onwards,

their Gallies, three whole dayes journeyes, they leavethem to the care of their journey: who being imbarqued in short time arrived at *Constantinople*, where, how welcome they were to the Emperer and his Nobles, I omit, to let you understand of the honourable reports made of their entertainment in *Trebisond*, and the welfare of the Prince, whose company there were few but desired.

The strangeness of this report made of *Castalinnus*, was exceeding admirable in the Emperours eares, who wondered not a little, that a King whom he had so much wronged, should use such kindness to his Son, and courtesie to his Messengers, extolling highly the honourable condition of the King, and much lamenting his owne follies, so rashly without any occasion offered, to injure him so farre, as to spoyle his Country, and to rob him perforce of his onely Child, his Sole delight and comfort. To recompence all which, and to keepe his friendship, he presently elected other Nobles

Nobles for *Trebisond*, to be employed, which with the Princes ransome, and many rich presents to the King and his Daughter were dispatched, with Letters of love, and desire of amity, all which, comming to the *Trebisondian* King, were so heartily accepted as they could wish; and in presence of the Nobles, and states of both Realmes, was the peace concluded, and a band of everlasting friendship promised, to all their joyes.

Thus with great delight at the earnest intercession of the King, spent those *Turkish* Nobles some time in *Trebisond*, till their prefixed time gan draw to end, when receiving their Prince with great rewards, and many thanks for their paines, they put to Sea, and were not long before they recovered their famous City of *Constantinople*, where they were most royally welcomed, but especially the Prince, for whose safety many pastimes were ordained, with Justings, Turneyes, Barriers, and other pleasing delights, wherein the Prince honourably bare himselfe, to the

great

great joy of his Father, and pleasure of the whole State, who gloried greatly in him, which was likely to prove a most honourable Princee, and their ensuing comfort. But while I digresse, let it be considered, that *Loves Heroicke Champion*, who thirsted to see the end of his desires, slept no time, but made all possible meanes he could, as wind and weather would give leave, untill he arrived in *Hungary*, which he recovered in so good time as he could wish, and taking that opportunity which was offered, he landed his companies, and neare to the Sea side encamped his power, untill he might be advertised of what power the King was, and where he remained, for the attaining of which, many espials were sent out sundry wayes, and many *Embuscadoes* laid, to intercept such as travelled the Countrey: but their Landing being descryed, every one in all the hast they could make, fied them to their cities and places of defence, where they, with their store of provision which they brought were received, The King securely passed his time, taking care for nothing, and

and joying wholly in the hopes he conceived of his Ladies grant, being advertised of the arrivall of a forrain power, overcome with Sorrow at that instant, as one that never adversity, was surprized with such suddain heavinesse, as no words, no perswasions, nor any comfort, might mitigate his Sorrow, what pains soever his Nobles tooke to pacifie him, his guilty conscience presaging some hardfortune to be at hand: the Nobility which had more regard to his welfare, and his Countrey then he could on the suddain imagine, after they had caused their *Rampiers* to be built, and their Fortresses to be made (doubting the worst) desirous to be resolved what the Enemy was, that thus daringly durst board him in his owne Countrey, they caused the Lord *Cosro. Mecha*, sometime of the chiefeest in Hungary, a wise and well governed Gentleman, to be sent unto them, to know whence they were, and their pretence, which against their wills, unacquainting them with their practise, had entred their confines.

The

The Noble man to whose charge this was committed, though he had small care of any matter, living dishonoured in his owne Country, where, in his Kings Raigne he was the onely honoured, and amongst his Nobles in most account of him, had his wits sundry wayes imployed, and on divers matters, yet amongst all imaginations, the thought of his owne Sovereignes was least, the report of his death being so certaine, but what soever he could imagine was uncertaine, wherefore as desirous to be resolved of his doubts, as the King and Nobles to be thereof certificed, onely accompanied with another of the disgraced Nobility, they hyed them towards the Campe and was by the Ambuscadoes soone surprized and brought to the Pavilion of the Generall, who saluting them with a kind countenance, demanded whence they were, and what occasions led them in such suspicious manner towards their Campe. The Nobles which had small care, which end went forward, after they had well advised themselves, said; Sir, if we give not

not those Titles your honour deserves,
pardon us which offend not of pre-
sumption therein, but of ignorance : that
we come as spyals to view thy forces,
and to discover them, therein you de-
ceive your selfe, but come as Messengers
from our King, to know thy pretence,
and what thou meamest landing thy
Armies without his licence, which is
contrary to the law of Arms? If thou come
in peace and not as an enemy, resolve
us this, and thou honorest us :

The Prince taking their words at ad-
vantage, where they said they came
from their King with a counterfeite
shew of great dislike, said; Traytors how
dare you to my face use those colours
of simplicitie, when you averre you
come from your King, which I know
is altogether untrue & wherefore that
you shall warne the rest how they de-
lude me, you shall have the reward of
Traytors, and calling for the provost
Marshall, commanded him to cut off
their heads.

The Nobles thinking he had bene

pub

past jest, seeing their Executioner so ready, humbly besought him to credit what they had said, which was true, and pardon their lives, for that law of Armes protecteth the Messenger of the Prince, from whom they come, therefore it would redound to his great dishonour, to violate the hostility of all Princes. While they were thus at their shrift it chanced *Marmoricus* their lawfull King, to enter the Pavilion of his General, whose presence much appalled the *Hungarian* Nobles, who standing so men past themselves, had no thought but in beholding him, which so much resembled their supposed dead King, the long noting of whom, caused them to renew their sorrowes, and with remembrance of the times they had past, to shed teares. The King imagining what they thought, knowing them well, put them from their studious thoughts thus.

Men of Hungary, what meaneth
your heaviness? shalke you hereby to
de-

deinde this noble Gentleman, or by
your fauings, to procure your fauour,
if either one or other of these causes,
you deceive your selves, and incur
you more trouble? Wherefore to
void the perils incident unto you, if
you be right *Hungarians*, and tender
the welfare of your Princess, in whose
rescue we come, briefly declare unto us,
in what estate she abideth, and where
the usurping King hath his residence?
Cesro Mocha, hearing that pleasing
tongue, wherewith he was acquainted
assured himselfe that it was their King,
and without further stay, humbly kis-
sing his Majesties feet his face bedewed
with teares, and his tongue saltering in
hismouth, as one with suddaine joy
vercome, he saith;

My Gracious Sovereigne, how
glad am I that I enjoy breath, to behold
your Majesty alive, whom all the
World reputeth for dead; the hea-
vie tydings of which, with your
face, moved the hearts of your
loving Subjects to such extreame
he

heaviness, as nothing might comfort
that past comfort, and all hope of be-
holding your Princely face, we recko-
ned you amongst the dead. In the ex-
cesses of this sorrow, as all evils com-
monly fall in one, when every heart and
eye was deploring the losse of so gra-
vions a Prince, then began our further
griefes, through the oppressions of that
usurping Tyrant, whose cruelty vnto
his Subjects hath been such, as grieueth
me to recount. Thy Sister he detaineth
in prison, from whence he hath vowed
he shall never be freed, vntill with con-
sent she take him for her King, or by
satisfaying his demands, receive that
death which he hath doomed her vnto.
Whose wrongs we poore men how
much soever we pitty, yet can we re-
medy nothing, our ability being little,
and our reputation lesse, amongst these
small Egyptians, who hath robbed vs
of what we possesse, not suffering vs to
enjoy our ancient patrimony, nor what
we might any way dispose vs off:
the revenge of which we hope is in thee
and thy power, who wilt maintaine

and defend thy owne lawfull right, rather offering thy selfe amongst vs the honour and love thee as our liues, than leaue vs any more. To the accomplishing of which, my selfe, with all thy owne Connercy borne Subjects that we procure vnto vs; will lend what ayde weake force will stretch vnto, and thus assure your Majesty.

The King hearing the lamentable report of the Lord *Cosro-Mecha*, could not forbear to shew the heaviness of his hearts sorrow, by his outward motions, yet to hide it as he might, imbracing them both; he framed a feined joy to them, howsoever his heart was overburthened with griefe. When they had passed sometime in parley about the affaires; and that some offers were made by these Nobles, of their ayde and assistance, a generall Councell was called where, by consent of such as had veriment, vnderstanding the power of *Artimason* the Vsurper, was not to be but such as guarded his Hold, and determined after the Army had taken themselves two or three dayes, your
M

forward to the City, there to leaguer the King, and cut off from them all supply of provision for victualls, whereof they had small store.

In the meane time, the Lords of Hungary, to give notice to all their friends, (with all speed) as they tendered their own liberties, to repaire with such power as they could make vnto the Camp. This devise was no sooner determined on, but the noble *Cosro-Mecha*, without returning to the King, spared not his paines and all others which he could command or intreat; proclaiming in every place as they passed: *Marmorette* their lawfull King, straighly charging all naturall Subjects of Hungary, to make repaire vnto the Campe. These tydings at first were hardly believed, yet such was the rumor of a forraign power laded, that all who could beare Arms repaired to the King, whom they found at the assault of the City where they were kept, such was the multitudes of people, which from all countries in his Regions came vnto him, that in short time he had power sufficient to overrunne

kingdome. The vsurper *Mimalson*, who had least thought ever to heare or see the *Hungarian* King, when report of his being in the Campe, was brought vnto him, his courage quailed, and his hope of enjoying the Crowne, was quite extinguished, so that despairing, he became like a man lunaticke, that nothing (whatsoever) might move him to any mirth or content, so that giving over all, he cared not what became of himselfe or his, yet was he carefully counselled by his Nobles, who regarded both his honour and their safety: but whatsoever they might counsell or determine, was ill employed; at his hands was nothing to be had, wherefore after they saw his small care, and that he was not to be advised, they determined either in field with vnappoynted Battell to try their fortunes, or by some such composition as might be for their countries safety and their reputation, to give over their tytle pretended to the Crowne of *Hungary*. Before that any thing was of them resolved, *Louis Herack* Champion, which had his mind on his

Lady, as well as of other affaires, could not rest in content, vntill he had finished, and either gained what they came for, or seene the event of fortune. Wherefore to avoyd further delayes, he summoned the City to parley, where in he required their answer, whether they would receive their lawfull King or no, if yea, they should suffer him in peace to enter, or otherwise vpon their answer, to abide the hazard incident to Armes, which he protested should be voyd of all favour, if he prevailed, and they refused this offer of his.

These summons, caused the Nobility to looke with better advise into their estates, and with consideration to wey each particuler perills which they found to be very many and dangerous, especially seeing the multitude, who were naturall Subjects, and did rather affect their own King, howsoever they professed in outward appearance, then the usurper, which made them the more earnest with their King, vnto whom they declared the offers made by *Loves Heroick Champion*, with the doubts
M 3 they

they had of his successe, who were nothing in number to the Kings power, which daily increased, and contrary, his decreased: wherefore they advised him to yeld vnto such Articles of honor as they would require, which should be both for his honour, and safety of him and his.

The vsurper hearing these perswasions from them; whereon his chiefest hope consisted, forgetting all former friendship and love to any of them, with most odious words reviled the, calling them traytors, dastards, and vpbraiding them with cowardise, which were never found but ever forward in all their actions, onely this excepted, wherein was no hope. These speeches moved his Nobles to such fury, that departing from him in discontent, they resolved for their owne safety, to seeke what meanes they could, and not by delays to incurre his displeasure, whose friendship they were by all meanes they could vse, to intreat. Wherefore in name of all thereof, the Lord *Princibus*, principall Treasurer vnto the King, by whose direction the

vest would be governed, sent for the
Princesse (*Timoclea*) from prison, whom
he vsed with honorable speeches, com-
forting her with hope of her Kingly
brother, who lived, and was in person
come with a strong power, to deliver
her from that captivity which so long
she endured, humbly beseeching her
grace, to become a favourable soliciter
to his Highnesse for them, who were to
be commanded by their Sovereigne,
whose Subjects they were, protesting
that neither for envy to him or his, they
vndertooke the action, but at comman-
dement, and to avoyd the ignominious
title of cowardise, which all of honora-
ble birth or mind, ought to detest. The
good Princesse which could not tell,
whether she might give credit to his
words or no, answered him thus.

My Lord *Parinthus*, vnder the greenest
grasse lurketh the most perilous pay-
son, experience hath taught me, in my
durance, the knowledge of friends, these
suddaine offers of love to my brother,
whom you all know, is long sithence
dead, causeth me the more to dread. I

am going to him, and that your offered friendship is but to that end to bereave me of that which long since I wished to leave, if it be so, good my Lord; hide not the truth thereof from me, for therein shall you shew your charitable mind to a distressed Captive.

Faire be it from my thought, Noble Lady, quoth *Parinthus*, that I should any way delude you, or move you to credit any thing other then truth, whom I hold my greatest hope of good, to assure you of which, so pleaseth your Excellence, I will my selfe bring you to his Majesties presence. When the Princeesse heard him make these proffers of favor, and perceived by his jesture he did not counterfeit, overcome with joy, she was in a trance, from which revived by the careful industry of the Lady *Dalmacia*, wife to the Lord *Parinthus*, she gave the Nobleman great thanks for his sayings, assuring him on her word, that she would so recompence that good, as he nor his, should have any cause to complaine of her vngratefulnesse. Whereupon she with her courteous speech, to desire

no time but to bring her to the Campe
where the King was, which he willing-
ly yeelded vnto, and causing a stately
Charyot to be ordained, and richly ap-
parelling the Princeesse as becommeth her,
accompanied with his Lady and two
daughters of rare beauty, himselfe way-
ting on her distrobed, issued out of the
gates, and in short time came neere the
Campe, and were by the Sentinels
discovered, and brought to the Kings
presence, who seeing the Princeesse,
whom he had great doubt the tyrant
would have murdered, so sudden a joy
surprized him, as he might not speake;
yet overcoming his passion, joyning
his face with hers, after many kind im-
bracings, he saith; *Timocles*, how have
the heavens blessed me, in giving me
life to behold thee, more deare vnto
me then a million of lives, whom fr-
thence I possesse, as the onely joy I con-
ceiued hope of in this world, I account
my happinesse more, then to be posses-
sed of the worlds reuenuew. But tell
me *Timocles*, what are these that
accompany thee, strangers to me
M 5 they

they are, how friendly soever they have
used thee.

Most gracious Sovereigns, for these
noble persons, I am to intreat; having
passed my word, to be their safe conduct
from any violence should be offered the,
therefore good my Lord, receive into
your favor the Lord *Marinthus*, Treasur-
er to the vsurper, his Lady and daugh-
ters, such as are by them protected, so
shalt thou honor me the more, by main-
taining my word, which relying on
your Princely nature, I have past. *Loves*
Heroick Champion, willing to hold her
honour in regard, said; Madam, how his
Majesty on the sudden may be wonne
to favour your sute, I cannot say, ha-
ving had such great cause to revenge
him on their cruelty, but for his life
him thank your grace, if he enjoy it.
The King, whose heart pittie moved to
render the sute of the *Princesse*, con-
siding towards the noble *Paraske* and
his Lady, with great content took them
from the earth whereon they were
accepting them to his Majesty, vnto
them with such honor and curtesie,

they admired him. After he had revived with his kind confessions these sorrowing suters, he said; *Parinthus*, as I have pardoned thy life, so faile nor to tell me thy Kings determination, whether he will yeeld, or in battell try the event of our fortunes.

CHAP. XXVI.

How the Lord Parinthus describeth to the King the whole estate, and determination of the Usurper, who flying from the forces of the puissant Army, is by Loves Heroick Champion pursued and taken, whom he sendeth for a prisoner to the Princeesse Amoretta, to Trebmond.

Racious soveraigne, quoth *Parinthus*, if he determines to seeke your grace, is more then I can say, for such desperate humors assaileth him, that he is not himselfe, and friends faileth him, from the Noble to the Peasant, whose wisdomes have with grave advise considered what wrongs have bene offered your Grace, and hith vpon

upon your Princely motions of mercy, solicited him to pity them, and yeeld vnto your grace, which when he could not be perswaded vnto, we all left him, and I in name of all the Nobility humbly beseech your Highnesse of mercy, who onely attendeth but my returne, at which time on your gracious word, they will deliver the City.

My Lord, quoth the King, what cause soever I have in the most extreamest manner to revenge me on you all, yet to the very child that sucketh, that I omit. And that thou and they all shall know I delight not in blood, nor wish the life of my mortall foe, returning vnto them, and from me say; that if in submissive wise, they issue their gates, and at my feet crave mercy, bring with them their usurping King. I will accept them, so that when they shall sweare your absolute allegiance to me and mine, they shall be hereafter maintained in such manner as becommeth faithfull Subjects to their Prince, I will admit them to my grace, and will be vnto them a loving and gracious sovereign. *Paraphrase*, which he

that he most desired, writing with many deepe sighes, the joy his heart conceived for his good successe after many humble and hearty prayers for the Kings life in all happinesse to be maintained, he besought his Grace to give him leave with his happy tydings, to make glad the hearts of those sorrowfull Nobles which expected his returne, which the King granted, detaining his wife and daughter to attend his sister, whose joyes exceeded the extreames of her misery, enjoying her Noble Brother, which she was one of all hope over to behold againe. In their recreation we leave them, and passe on with the Lord *Parmentier*, who made no stay vntill he came to the gater, where diuers of his friends expected his coming. No sooner entered he the City, but summoning the Nobles and Gouernours all together, he delivered vnto them, what he had receiued of the King, and how willing he was to shew like clemency vnto them all, vpon those conditions specified, wherevnto they perswaded them to yeeld,

yeeld, not omitting any thing to make them mindfull of the little hope they had of the Vurper's successe; for which they had no reason so encline unto him, who had so small regard of them, but rather let him endure the reward of his owne follies, than that so many should perish for one mans wrongs. Resolved thus, they hastened unto the Court, at whose sodaine entering, the King was greatly appalled, considering in what discontent they parted with him, yet shewing a countenance void of all feare, hee required the cause of their coming whom they soon resolved, letting him know each particular of their intent, perswading him to patience, for what they had determined should bee accomplished. The King hearing his owne doome of misery pronounced, albeit it moved him to great impatience, yet restraining cholles with his smooth speech he besought them a respite for his answer till the next morning, which they willingly consented unto. And so leaving him they departed each one to his severall residence.

But he in whose heart revenge harboured, having his mind wholly bent on their ruine, after he had conferred with such as werre full of mischiefe, as himselfe of cruelty, and was by them advertised what power they were of, he caused them secretly in the night Armed, to assemble at the Court, where in very covert manner they remained untill the time came that the Nobles should come to receive their answer, who voyd of all suspect of evill entered the Pallace, desirous to know his pleasure touching the matter then between them in question. No sooner came they to the Kings presence, but the cruell Tyrant shewing in his countenance the pretence of his heart, began in termes of great reproach to exclaime against the Nobles whom he accused of treason and unjust dealing against him and the state of his Countrey, that flying from him which was their lawfull Sovereigne, sought to supplant him to Crowne another. But Traytors, quoth he, you shall reape such reward as your treachery deserveth, and therewithall giving the watch word,

WITTE

his

his confederates which for the purpose
 was Ambushed, & issued ypon them
 and suddainly surprized as many
 they could comp by: the rest fled,
 entering the City, & proclaimed
 the lawfull King, offering in his name
 free Pardon of life and goods, to
 many as followed them. At which offer
 of grace, the Commons wearyd with
 oppression of the Usurper, in multitude
 assembled themselves, and guyded by
Parishus, they fiercely assailed & King
 in his Courte, slaying as many as they
 could reach vnto, and rescue the
 fellow Nobles, whose deaths by the
 Tyrant was determined, had not the
 valour and pollicy of this noble *Baris*
 ther prevailed.

In this exploit, many of the compa-
 ny of the Usurper were slaine, himselfe
 with such as escaped, betooke them
 to the Mountaines, where they Encamped
 themselves, expecting ayd of those
 whome they preferred. But they more regarding
 their own weale, then his honour, & fe-
 ling no comfort, or hope of recovery,
 submitted themselves vnto the King.

mercy, and were of him received. This Canvassado passed: the commons with generall voyce elected *Marmoricus* for their King. *Parinthus* boasted him with all speed to the Campe; and to the King declared the trecherous pretence of the Murper; with the event of all his and their actions, and in the name of the whole State besought him to receive the Crowne, and the faithfull love of all the Commons. *Marmoricus* hearing the mischievous pretence of this Vsurper, pitying his Subjects that had so long been governed by a Prince so ill conditioned, at the earnest intercession of the noble *Parinthus*, guarded with a troupe of his bravest men at Armes, marched to the City at the entry of which, the whole Nobility, bare-legged and bare-footed received him, and to his Highness delivered the keyes of their Ports, with presents of rich price, marching before him to the Pallace, crying with a generall voyce *Marmoricus*. *Marmoricus* The King noting his Subjects loves, with hearty thanks required them, exhorting them to obedience and loyalty.

loyaltrie, which if they faithfully follow-
 ed, he would be a mercifull Prince unto
 them. *Marmozens* in possession of his
 Crowne, willing his friends should par-
 ticipate with him, dispatched a Mes-
 senger for *Loves Heroick Champion*, the
 Princeesse and her attendants, who all at
 their duty obediently fulfilled his com-
 mandement, *Loves Heroick Champion*
 excepted; who carefull of his charge,
 and looking into the practices and de-
 vises of the Ysurper, besought his Grace
 to pardon his not coming to the Court
 for a time untill he had scene the event
 of his affaires, and sending for such
 guides as he was informed to be well
 acquainted in those Deserts, he put him-
 selfe in search for the Ysurper, and his
 scattered crew, whom in short time he
 found to the number of one thousand
 on horse and foot, which he no sooner
 espied, but cheering his Companies
 which were not above forty, not wait-
 ing to give them dayes, hee bravely
 assailed them and so valiantly behaved
 himselfe in that conflict, that after one
 whole houre spent in hardy fighting
 they got

Chivvy

Chivalry, there was few of the companies living. The King he surprized as he was flying, with whom he returned to the City, and to the King *Marmoricus* delivered him, who kindly accepting his Present, returned the Knight many thanks for his pains.

This brunt past, and all things by the valour and industry of *Loves Heroick Champion* brought to quiet end; the King unwilling to detain his Subjects from their owne homes, recompenced every man for his good service, and dislodged the Campe.

A world of wonder it were to recount what generall joy was throughout the Land for the returne of their King and his good successe, for which great Triumphs were ordained with Jufts, Barriers, and Tilt, wherein the Nobles of the Countrey in great bravery behaved themselves, but the best & chiefest honour in each severall action was given *Loves heroick Champion*, who like himselfe, so behaved himselfe, as there was no talke throughout the Court and Countrey, but tended to the generall comendation

commendations of this noble Prince.

Thus as all things hath end, so ended these Thyumphes, and the King in peace enjoyed his Kingdome, which through the *Trebisond* Kings assistance, and the valor of this honoured Knight he obtained. All things quieted, *Leone* *Heroick Champion*, after he had a small time reposed himselfe from his travels, humbly besought his Highnesse to suffer him with his Companies to depart, which favour he could not by any intreaty obtaine. Wherefore to fatisfie the King, with his owne longer stay, he dismissed his Army, whom the King so royally rewarded, as no man had cause to complaine of his time spent, but every one to speake of his honour and bounty. The conduct of whom, after he had with great care purvaid their victuals, with all things necessary, he committed to *Panzerius*, a Noble man of *Trebisond*, by whom the Knight advertised the King of his stay, which was chiefly for the Lord *Dyscher*, whom they left Viceroy in *Asiatic*, commending also his service unto the

Lady

Lady Amoretta, he presented by his noble Pomarius the Usurper vnto her as prisoner, (and his Conquest.) Thus all things carefully purvaid, the winde blowing a favourable gale, they imbarqued themselves, and sayling with a wind as they could wish, they shortly arrived in safety at their desired Port, where their welcome was such of the King, as they might joy to receive it, where friend with friend joyed for their returne: onely the Princesse endur'd the greatest penance, missing the return of her Knight, who could not be persuaded of his welfare wanting his presence, yet accepted she the the Usurper his prisoner, and through the great protestations of the Lord Pomarius, had hope to see him againe, whose heart enjoyed small content wanting his company.

CHAP. XXVII.

How old Machaon, sometimes Tutor to the Prince Armarus, now Lover Heroick Champion, had answer from the Oracle at Delphos, how the Prince lived, and what joy hee conceived thereof, and still continued his search for him.

NOW Gentlemen, heere we leave the noble *Marianus* in company of the *Heavenly King*, spending his time in small content, wanting the sight of his desired Lady, and his Ladies with teares bewailing him, whom he more desired then the worlds possessions, to shew what hapned the same *Machaon*, who as you have heard before, left the *Carmanian* Court, with all his possessions. Pilgrim-like journeying towards *Delphos*, there the Oracle to bee advertised of the King, and the Princes life in that, and coming to the sacred Shrine of *Apollo*, after his Oracles, and his offerings made before the

shrine of *Apello*, the pittifull God moved
at his intercession, and considering the
faithfull love to his Prince and Coun-
try, which is pleasing both to Gods and
men, after he had with teares bewailing
his Prince, was thus answered.

Machaon, thy faithfull love to Prince
and Country, we have regarded, & mo-
ved with pittie of thee and thy Common-
wealth, whose Subjects distressed, desire
to have knowledge of their King, & his
Princely Sonne, with what shall befall
them, receive these lines, which shall
import the event of all, yet for a time
conceale them, & continue thy travel.

Machaon, whose heart was light-
ened with this comfortable voyce,
lookings about him, espied a paper,
which taking vp, he read in this man-
ner.

Ambitious shall
your land with warre annoy,
Palace by force shall hold,
this Subject doth enioy,
A foreign power
these Rebels pride shall quell,
Through

Through whom, your commons,
 Shall in quiet dwell,
 Before his face,
 Whom they suppose for dead,
 The Traytors shall
 For life, with pity plead.
 A stranger Queene
 On Kingly Seate shall sit,
 Vnto whose rule
 Your Commons shall submit,
 Religions, feeling
 Your Countreys happy state,
 Overcome with joy,
 Shall dye at Princes gate.
 He vnto whom
 Your Crowne belongeth aright,
 Is all in may, all in
 Your Merchants, King, and Knights
 Supposed lost, in all
 Thou once againe shall meete
 In forraigne soyle,
 Sitting in Princely state,
 When thou shalt see,
 As such there is,
 Which shall be found by thee

returne thou then
 all dread thy guilelesse blood,
 whose life preserued
 is for thy Countreyes good.

When the aged Pilgrime had perused
 these Lines, musing at the darkness
 of the same, which he continued many
 dayes, yet had no certainty, wherefore
 resolving on the mercifull favor of the
 Gods, which had so pittifully heard his
 prayer, he passed on his journey, in
 search for those Princes, which he
 hoped were living, whom to his tra-
 uel we leave, to returne vnto the
 Princesse *Timoclea*, who having the
 company of *Louis Herosick Champion*,
 and sundry motions of desire to enjoy
 his Love, evermore applauding his
 person, curtesie, and valour, which so
 farre exceeded all mens in her judg-
 ment, that she honoured him for the
 only Paragon of the world, holding
 her for the most happiest Lady on the
 earth, which should enjoy his love, re-
 lating that she were worthy of his love.

Through whom, your commons,
 Shall in quiet dwell,
 Before his face,
 Whom they suppose for dead,
 The Traytors shall
 For life, with pitey plead.
 A stranger Queene
 On Kingly Seate shall sit,
 Vnto whose rule
 Your Commons shall submit,
 Religious, feeling
 Your Countreyes happy state,
 Overcome wickedly,
 Shall dye at Princes gate.
 He vnto whom
 Your Crowne belongeth right,
 Is all in one, vnto
 Your Monarches, King, and Knight,
 Supposed lost, in all
 Whom once againe shall meete
 In forraigne soyle,
 Sitting on Princely Seate,
 Whom they shall see,
 Such one whom shall see,
 As such they shall see,
 Which shall be found by thee,
 Whom they shall see,
 Returne

returne thou then
 also dread thy guiltlesse blood,
 whose life preserues a
 way for thy Countreyes good.

When the aged Pilgrime had perused
 these Lines, musing at the darkness
 of the same, which he construed many
 wayes, yet had no certainty, wherefore
 resolving on the mercifull favor of the
 Gods, which had so pittifully heard his
 prayer, he passed on his journey, in
 search for those Princes, which he
 hoped were living, whom to his tra-
 uelle we leave, to returne vnto the
 princeesse *Tamoclea*, who having the
 company of *Love's Herosick Champion*,
 had sundry motions of desire to enjoy
 his Love, evermore applauding his
 person, curtesie, and valour, which so
 farre exceeded all mens in her judg-
 ment, that she honoured him for the
 only Paragon of the world, holding
 her for the most happiest Lady on the
 earth, which should enjoy his love, wish-
 ing that she were worthy of his love.

and framing herselfe by all meanes the modesty would permit, to gaine it. He whose heart was fixed on his Lady had no motion of any other, one wished to be with her whom he much honoured, whose presence more desired, then all the riches in the world could afford. Tormented with these restless passions, which was often King and Courtiers noted, especially the Lady *Timoclea*, many imagined the cause, yet none so good a Physician to find the truth, or cause thereof, continuall care weakeneth the body, causeth many extreames, so *Marianne* feeling himselfe a weakenesse of nature and looking for some disease, through his melancholy to ensue, finding the King at convenient time, humbly besought him of a favour to depart, alledging that the ayre, and contagiousnesse of those confines, nothing agreeing with his body, that his longer stay might be by confusion.

The King which loved him as his owne soule, and tendering his

are more then all the wealth of his Kingdome, whom he had found so kind and forward, adventuring his life for his good in many broyles, though loth to leave him in whom so much he delighted, yet nothing his melancholike humours, which had much altered his complexion, imagined it was no excuse, and therefore the rather condescend to his request, appointing time as he desired, when if God were winde and weather, to be ready with their Shipping, to conduct him to Egypt, whether the King promised with his Sister and Nobles to accompany him, for which journey, a stricke command was given to all Officers to see each thing necessary purveyd, which with such diligence was performed, as in short time all things as they could wish or desire, furnished, finely attending a faire winde to set saile, which they stayd not long for, but a gale fating their purpose, the King with his Sister, *Levi Herick Champion* and their staine, embarkd themselves for Egypt, where by

the good furtherance of him that com-
mandeth all, they shortly arrived in
safety whose coming, being known
vnto the Vizeroy *Diphilus*, with such
provision as they could make on the
sudden repaired vnto the place
Landing, where the King joyfull to
the good recovery of *Diphilus*, in most
kind manner embraced him. And
generall welcomes being given on
sides by the Nobles, they passe on
wards the Pallace of the King, with
with a zealous love of his Commis-
was to his great delight welcomed
with such shewes of joy, as on the
d they could prepare.

Thus after some time spent in
getting and other pastimes, for the
pleasures, to beguile the time the
King, *Louis Heroick Champion* staid
on thornes, vntill he might behold
sweet content of his liues comfort,
ding *Diphilus* in a place where
might discusse at large their
The Knight not forgetting his promise
made to *Diphilus* in his owne Coun-
try, and willing to make amends

the wrong he had there, thus sayd: My Lord, what I have to impart vnto you, as one that wisheth your good, is such as becommeth a friend, vowed to doe your Lordship what service my ability can stretch vnto, onely I beseech you, promise on your Honour to conceale what I shall discover.

Dipilus, who both honoured and loved the Knight, musing to what these speeches tended, relying on the fidelity of him whom he never had heard or seeme to commit any dishonourable action, gave him his word and honour, to be as secret in all things as he could desire, which the Knight accepting, thus sayd:

My Lord, first I humbly beseech your favourable love, to be continued, and pardon my great offence committed against you in *Carmania*, where my selfe, (not my selfe) I committed a most heinous and dishonourable fault, for which I am willing to make such satisfaction, as you can require.

Dipilus hearing the Knight vse these speeches of submission, noting

them well, and bethinking himselfe what had fortuned being in *Carmenia*, could not call to mind any kindness offered him by any inferior person, neither did he well remember the Princes discourtesie, yet leaving nothing vnthought, calling his wits together, bethought him of the Prince, whom he forbore to answer, vntill he had with earnestnesse noted the Physiomy of the Knight, whose face with long sicknesse, wherewith he was at that time possesed, was quite altered from the forme it now had, which made him more to admire. But calling to mind the resemblance of the aged King he conceived by some signes of his favour, that it was *Diphilus*, the Prince, yet doubtfull he was, for that being borne, he came to the *Carmenian* Court with no better countenance then a Merchant.

After many thoughts, not willing to offend through rashnesse, or to offend any kindness, he humbly besought him in true friendship which he found, to pardon him, which com-

not call to mind no wrong done him,
nor any familiarity that ever had beene
betweene them.

Well my Lord, (quoth the Knight)
I see your mind is free from revenge,
that know not those that have endan-
gered your life, and therefore am the
more willing to reveale my self, to clear
you of this doubt. Know that I am *Ar-
marius*, the unhappy Prince of *Carmania*,
who in my Fathers Court so much a-
bused you, whereof I repent me, and
have sorrowed for it. But pardon me
good *Diphilus*, and accept that friend-
ship, I vowed vnto you, which will
endeavour to deserve thy love in all oc-
casions wherein true love consisteth.
To give you some cause to credit what
I say, I have thought good to find this
opportunity, not onely to reveale my
selfe to you, whose favour I desire, but
to my best endeavour to deserve the
same, and to advance thy estate, if so
you can like of my offer.

Diphilus amazed at these speeches,
after he had with more advised eyes
behold

beheld the Prince, was assured it was
 he, prostrating himselfe on his knee
 humbly besought his Grace of pardon
 which had so vnreverently behaue
 himselfe. But gracious Prince (quoth
 he) faults vnwillingly committed, de-
 serve the least punishment, I speake
 my selfe, which am ready to make
 mends, in performing any penance
 shall please your Highnesse, so enjoy
 me, yeelding many millions of thanks
 for that fauour you haue vouchsafed
 in giving me that credit to reuele
 your selfe, to the vnworthiest of men
 in high esteeme, which desireth your
 Highnesse knowledge, yowing by
 honour of my noble Ancestry, to be
 governed and directed by the Prince
Armenius, and shall so please it your
 Highnesse, follow your Grace, where
 euer in shall stand with your good
 pleasure to conduct me. The Prince
 interrupting his speech, lovingly em-
 braced the Lord *Diphilus*, giving him
 many thanks for his kind office, where
 he was assured was faithfully spoken.
 In accomptes of which, my Lord

he) and to make you some satisfaction
for my former wrong offered you, I
will endeavour to advance your estate,
so it stand with your good liking, in
this manner,

You see (my Lord) though with
some trouble and effusion of blood on
either part, the King in peace and quiet
enjoyeth his owne Country, and with
the Crowne of his enemy, is likewise
invested. Alluring brytes are King-
domes, and have caused many Nobles
who not content with their owne
states, to hazard honour, life, and what
soever else they enjoyed, to attaine vnto
them.

But my *Diphilus*, if thou canst
frame thy liking to my wish, and bend
thy minde to the love of *Timoclea*, the
Princesse, my endeavour shall be to ob-
taine her for thy Lady, and the King-
dome of *Egypt* for her dowry, be-
sides, she is heire to her brother, who
lying without issue, shall to higher
honours promote thee. This is all my
noble *Diphilus*, that I have to say,
and (so much I say) for that I wish thy

advancement, if thou like the Lady, and have not bestowed thy liking elsewhere. Say thy mind, as vnto him which not onely in this, but in all other matters wherein I may doe thee good, command me as thy selfe.

Diphilus, who was wise and well demeaned, endued with valour and curtesie, as much as might be required, humbly returned many thanks for this unexpected good, moved with a desire of Kingly dignity, well content, to enjoy so brave a Princess for his love, without farther stay, said;

My honoured Lord, I cannot frame my tongue to yeeld such thanks as my heart would utter, onely this good I crave, that your Highnesse continue your gracious favour towards me, whose will shall be ever a law to *Diphilus*, who will ever be directed by your Majesties advice. And seeing this honorable Prince, you have motioned, willingnesse to doe me this good, I humbly beseech you continue it, and bind *Diphilus* in everlasting bonds of friendship to your service. Here

they interrupted, by the coming of the King, who hearing that the Prince was gone that way, delighting in his company more then in any others, came suddainely on them, yet not in such manner, but he was espyed of them. The King which saw them earnest in their speech, coming vp with them said; Sir Knight, were my Lord *Diphilus* a Lady, as he is an honorable Gentleman, I should be very suspicious of you both, that you would find time to stretch a pointe farther then became you. In faith Gentlemen (quoth he) as there is brotherly love between you, which the world well noterh, let be a trinity, and accept me for the third person, so shall you honour me more then I will say; and endue me with such happinesse as I will not for avoyding of flattery. Your Majesty quoth the Prince, may jest, but would it were knowne vnto your grace, our loves to your Highnesse, you might then say, you have such poore friends of vs, as will ever be ready to venture our lives in your honourable service.

Expo

Experience good Knight, answered the King, long silence hath taught me that, whose eyes are witnesses of your loyaltie, which I will endeavour to requite, as when you please to make tryall you shall find, especially you my Lord, whose blood lost in adventuring for me I can no way requite. Seeing quoth the Prince, your Highnesse is thus disposed to jest, pardon I beseech you what I have to say, and favour me so much as to heare my humble sute (and hearing) let me obtaine it at your gracious hands, in granting which, your Grace shall more honor me then I dare report. Honorable Knight, answered the King among friends what should need distrust, my heart grieveth that she noble Knight *Marianus*, should doubt to obtaine what ever resteth in my power to grant. Wherefore sweet friend I pray on, for by the honour of the *Hungarian* kingdome, whose Crowne I owe through thy good industry, what ever thou requirest shall not bee denied. Thanks gracious Lord, not for my selfe I intreat, but for this Gentleman

whose heart having sworne fealty to Love, which is the soveraigne guide of all men, hath framed his liking unto the Princesse *Timoclea*, whose servant he hath vowed himselfe; if then noble Prince it shall stand with your Highnesse good pleasure to accept of him, whose honourable birth and haughty deeds of Chivalrie may merit some esteeme with persons of worth, I have my desire (by granting of which) and obtaining the Princesse good liking, I shall be more honoured, then if your Grace had invested me with both the Kingdomes of *Hungary* and *Egypt*.

Marianns, quoth the King, if thou hadst required as much for thy selfe as thy friend, thou couldst not have honoured me more, whose amity I desire to participate with above all men of what account soever: but seeing thy request is for him whose advancement I desire, and for that thou shalt know in what regard I hold thy love, I will doe my best to procure her love, women have fancies, and are head-strong in their affects, whether they have granted her love

love I know not, neither can I force her liking, if I could, it were not convenient, for a forced beast is froward, and women wedded to their will. If in their love they should be contrariied, were better lost then found, their revenging minds are such, as they will not be quiet, vntill for their husbands safety they have armed his head with such prooffe, that he may walke in safety amongst the best headed stags in my Forrest. But leaving this jest, (*Marianus*) that thou maist assure thee of my love, my industry shall be to gaine her for thy friend, whom I both honour and love, and for you my Lord, I give hearty thanks, that will accept of her, whom I (may say) I love as a brother, who if I can perswade, to your wish, her large dowry shall testifie. Our pleasant parley hath procured me a good appetite, my stomack telleth me it is dinner time, wherefore Gentlemen, leaving this talk which is as much conquest as the greatest of *Hercules*, which did never conquer woman, (vnto me) let us walk, & doubt not but I will play the Orator in such

wile

wile as shall procure your content Lord
Diphilus, and satisfie your request.
 Thanks gracious Prince quoth *Diphilus*
 which is all I have to requite so great a
 benefit, onely your true liegeman shall
 I ever continue, and be ready at your
 pleasure, to doe you service.

CHAP. XXVIII.

*How the Trebisond King dyed, leaving
 the Kingdome to the Princeesse Amo-
 retta, the King of Hungaria wooeth
 his Sister the Princeesse Timoclea for
 Diphilus.*

 Entlemen, here the story
 telleth vs, of the *Trebisond*
 King, (as flesh is mortall)
 vexed with an extreame
 sicknesse, was so oppressed therewith,
 that nature failing through weaknesse,
 all Physicke helpes were frivolous, so
 that perforce hee must pay his due
 to death which commandeth all,
 whose breath failing in the common
 of this tyrant, which may not be in-
 treated, his soule departed this earth-
 ly trunke, to see the joyes of hea-
 ven.

everlasting Kingdome, whose death his Subjects so with pitions plaints bewailed, as might have changed the most hardest heart in a Chaos of lamenting sorrowes, beholding their teares, whose body was most royally intombed amongst his Ancestry. But among those which sorrow overwhelmed, and had like to have drowned in deaths gulph, the Princessle whom nature forced in some sort so lament, as a Child having lost her Father, was so weakned with her plaints and hartes sorrow, that long time it was not to be thought she could recover it, so much was her tender heart touched, oftentimes bewailing her Fathers death, and then againe grieving for the want of her Love and Lord the *Heroick Champion*, of whose safety whom she more desired then to be Lady of the whole earth, could not be perswaded. Long did shee languish in these extremities and could not be comforted, in so much that she rather desired death then to live. But hee that in extremities is our best comfort, preserving her for the Commons benefit, sent her health,

health, who being recovered, the Coronation finished, and the Crowne by comon consent of the Parliament confirmed unto her, many offers of Marriages were made unto her, for which, humble suites of her Councell were not omitted, who desired nothing more, then to have the issue of her noble body succeed her. But no perswasions might move her from the Knight, who had the chiefe interest of her heart, to whom she had vowed her selfe, protesting likewise, never to grant her love or liking to any one, but onely to him. This resolution so much grieved her nobles, that nothing could breed more discontent, yet as duty commanded, framed themselves to her government, who with such wisdom directed all things for the benefit of her commonweale, that it was admirable to behold that wisdom in one of her sexe.

But to returne to our matter. The Hungarian King, who, minding his honorable word with the noble *Maria*, finding opportunity, gan question his sister in this manner.

Timoteus

Timotea, since the decease of our deare Parents, thou hast bene left unto my government, for whom (without boast) or desire of benefit of thee or any, I have had that care as of mine owne good, and ever will, so thou be ruled by me. And for that I see thy yeares requir-eth to be linked in marriage, that thou maist participate in love with thy Husband, and spend the prime of thy yeares as is fitting thy estate, I have found a Gentleman of honour and valour, such a one, as on my word loveth thee, and I have cause for his paines in my service imployed to honour. Therefore good sister, if thou love me as a Brother and hast not bestowed thy love elsewhere, in this matter be ruled by me, and in doing whereof, thou shalt finde me thy brother, and most assured friend who will ever be as carefull of thy well doing and honour, as of mine owne good. Say therefore thy minde plainly and let me know whether thou dost love, or canst love?

The Lady, whose wisedome was such as ballanced her honour, not knowing

whether her Brother were in jeast or earnest, thus modestly said: Gracious Lord, and my dread Sovereigne, pardon I humbly beseech you, your subject, and suffer me not through my fond answering so frivolous a question, which you vrge but for tryall, to procure your displeasure, or mine owne shame.

Why *Timocles*, quoth the King, you mistake me, if you thinke I jest, for on my honour, I meane what I say, therefore dally not with me, if you hope of my good. But tell me if thou dost love, or wilt love my friend?

The Lady hearing the King in earnest, although she could be well content to have enjoyed the sweet pleasures of love in marriage, thus said: Dread Lord, and my most gracious Sovereigne, sithence it is your pleasure I should answer your demand, know, that as modesty is the ornament of Maids, and chastity the garland that beautifieth all our sexe, so have I carefully weyed mine honour in such manner, that I neither love, nor as yet ever made choyce of any in love, but have eschewed all such frivolous motions of the flesh, to

to my greatesse power, as becometh a
 Lady of such honour that I may love,
 I doubt not, because it is the commande-
 ment of our Maker, and incident to
 all creatures, who in their kinds make
 choyse of some one to participate with
 yet shall my love never be such, as may
 disparage your Highnesse love towards
 me, but such as shall be to your content.
 And as for your Graces pleasure to be-
 stow me on a man so honourable, so
 standeth it with your will to let me
 know him, I will answer more di-
 rectly.

God a mercy for that wench, quoth
 the King, then I doubt not but we shall
 have a match, or else thy wisdom is
 not such as I wish it were. But tell me
 vnfirmly my *Tessellus*, canst thou
 love the Lord *Diphilus*, a man for birth
 honourable, for valour to compare with
 most adventuring Knights in the
 world, in person comely, and so be-
 haviour in his behavious, as for curi-
 tie, he is to be matched with the best.
 He is the man Madam, whom if you
 fancy, thou honourst me in thy love,
 Of *Madam* to *Madam* in love

and thou shalt find me a brother, may a Father, if Father's love may exceed the brothers. Say therefore thy mind; and let me know thy answer.

The Lady whose hope was, her brothers sute had beene for *Loves Heroick Champion*, with whose love she was a little touched, yet modesty mastering such fond motions, would not let affection take such roote, but that she could at her pleasure expell it.

After the Lady had heard her brother, whom she perceived by his earnestnesse in vitering his sute, would not willingly be denyde, she said; Pardon me my good Lord, if I passe modesty, considering your great praise of the Gentleman, beleeve me, he is much beholding vnto your Grace, who could have thought you would have proved so good a soliciter; had your study been the Lawes of this Realme, no doubt, but you should have had many Clyents: were the Gentleman here himselfe, he could not have said thus much; and therefore he may thinke himselfe beloved and honoured of your highnesse.

But

But for answer, as I would have you in your first wooing disgraced, least it discourage you in your owne enterprises being a Bachelor, so can I say little of my selfe, who is to bee governed by you, to whom in all humblenesse I referre me, and shall so you be pleased, be content, if it were with one not so worthy as the Lord *Diphilus*. (And yet.)

Nay Madame, quoth the King, leave not off so abruptly with an parenthesis, your words are doubtfull. Tell me therefore, is there any other before me if there be, and thou hast made choyce, (and you both agreed) I will not gallie it, nor tye thee to any other then thy owne content in marriage. Therefore say, what those words (and yet) imported.

Pardon my overboldnesse, gracious Lord, answered the Lady, which unadvisedly overpast those speeches, I credit my word, which have no law fixed in my heart, but will endeavour my selfe to the liking of him whom you shall command mee, yet will

answer your demand, and meaning of those words, taken so by your Grace as rebound, though I must and will, frame me to the love and liking of the Lord *Diphilus*. Yet had the noble Generall beene pleased, and with that, a deepe sigh stayd her tongue, in such wild, as she could goe no further.

The King vnderstanding which way the winde of her desire blew, thought he could have been better content with her choyce, yet to put her from other thoughts, and to have his late taken effect, he perswaded her to let slip such fond imaginations, for that he had placed his love on a Ladie of his Country, whom he would not leave for all the world. With these happie rydings for the Lord *Diphilus*, after some other kind speeches to the Ladie, the King departed, so joying in his good successe, that he could not rest untill he had comforted the Lord *Diphilus* with his answer, whose mind egged on by *Loves Heretick Champion*, was so fixed on the Ladie, that she was become the Mistresse of his heart, and he joyed in

in nothing but in contemplating of her love, thinking every day a yeare, and every houre a moneth, vntill he heard the Kings answer, musing thus on his Love, tossing with a mind disquieted, from one side of the bed to the other, his Page brought him word, that a Gentleman from the King attended to speake with him, which suddaine newes; re-
vived so his spirits, as made his heart more light, then long time before it had bene, hoping to heare such tydings as his loving sute required. The messenger having delivered his message, judge you that he lovers, whether you could slacke any time, vntill you heard the doome of your Mistresse, which he was assured to doe by the King, vnto whom he hasteneth with such speed as he could. To whose presence being come the King, as joyfull for his good success, and his sisters grant, as the Lord, Desires to heare it, with a smiling countenance, which shewed the joy of his heart: said;

My Lord, though my skill in weaving be but small, having never accustomed

my selfe to any such practise; yet have
playd the cunning Advocate for your
Lordship, and will assure you, so you
hold your word and promise, the Prin-
cesse shall be yours, and thereon take
my word of honour.

Diphilus so over-joyed at these ty-
dings, could not well tell whether he
heard the King speake, or dreamed of
his happinesse. But standing a while
in an extatic, his senses being come
again, with eyes gantly beholding the
King, thus said, My honourable and
gracious Lord, what may I do to requite
your Princely favour, who hath vouch-
safed me so great honour, not onely to
bestow your onely Sister on me, but to
become my honourable soliciter, which
I would say, modesty compelleth me
to conceale. Onely this I assure your
Majestie, my layall service shall ever be,
as at your command, in such duti-
full manner, that your Majestie shall
have no cause to repent of so great a
good done vnto a stranger. Enough
of my lord few words doth suffice among
friends, wherefore forbate these spee-
ches.

ches, love my Sister, and for her sake
thinke of me as a friend, which will
ever ready to doe you what pleasure
can. To give you some interest of my
faith, appoint the marriage day at your
pleasure, and for her dowry, accept the
Kingdome of *Egypt* which shall re-
maine to you and your heires for ever.
onely this homage shall you yearly
render in my Court of *Hungary*, by
swift running Counters of this Coun-
try, and so God make you happy in
your love, and a joyfull Father of many
Children. With this *Lover Hercules*
Champion entered his presence, and
the King what man so welcome, his de-
uty done, the King lovingly imbracing
him, said;

"Sir Knight, I have not long since
comforted your friend with my happy
tydings, and not onely assured him of
a wife which I hope will prove loving &
kind vnto him, but have invested him
with the title of the King of *Egypt*,
both which I wish him so much joy.
I desire to haue joy, his Wedding
let him appoint at his pleasure, which

shall with the greatest honour I can be performed.

Most gracious and dread Lord, quoth the Knight, how thus your honourable courtesie have tyed me vnto your service, I omit: that at my request hath thus favoured my deare friend, whose good I esteeme as mine owne, and ever will be ready with my best endeavour to serve, at all times and places where my force or service may doe either your Majestie or my Lord *Dipbilus* good. And, feeling it is wrought to his content, and your Graces good liking, let me intreat this favour of you both, that the Wedding may suddainly be solemnized, for that my stay may not be long here, such desire I have to see my Sovereigne Lord, who I am sure expecteth my returne long before this time. Sir, quoth the King, did you know how pleasing those speeches of your esteemed nature were to me, that desire nothing in the whole world so much as your company, you would never harpe so much on that string. But how long soever your stay shall be, this day eight dayes

of J. doe appoint for the wedding, to the
 Lord *Diphilus* be agreed, and say
Amen.

Never (quoth *Diphilus*) let him be
 allowed for Clarke, which refuse to
 say *Amen*, to such a Parson, the Bri-
 zons bringing such content, seeing
 your Majestie referres it to me, I
 say J, and humbly thanke your Grace
 for your honourable favour.

The Wedding day appointed
 assigned, the King sent for the Princess
 who that night supped altogether
 which being ended, the Princess in
 presence of many of the Lords of Na-
 garia and Egypt, was betrothed to
 the Lord *Diphilus*, and the Marrying
 day appointed against which time,
 all the Nobles summoned to be ac-
 cording to attend the King, by whose com-
 mandment all the preparation for home
 of that day might be devised, was
 dined, the time of night being spent
 summoned their watchfull eyes to sleep
 wherefore after many solemn
 taken one of the other, they hasten
 on all sides to their rest, only *Diphilus*

and the Princesse best content, she
joying in her Love, and Kingly Bro-
thers liking, and he blessing a million
of times the day wherein he first saw
the Prince, procurer of his so great
good.

What other imaginations assailed
them, let those suppose, and thinke
which have felt the sweet consent in
Love. To which I leave them, to re-
count vnto you the sorrow of the *Tre-
liford* Queens who ruling with ho-
nour, beloved both of Peeres and Com-
mons, so much royalty as might be
desired, endured so many sundry tor-
ments of mind, wanting her most de-
sires, that the day was irksome vnto her
and the night ordained forrest, rest-
less she consumed, that with her con-
tinuall watchings, and other passions,
her body became weake, and a grievous
sicknesse assailed her, the cause no man
could imagine, neither might Physick
minister any cure to her disease: so that
given over to death, she languished
in great extremities, not daring for
modesty, to reveal the cause, onely
this

this was her chiefest comfort, when she could be freed from the company of such Ladies and Completers, which visited her, with *Syricha* to recount her loves, sometime extolling his valour and person, and oftsoones accusing him of unloyalty, exclaiming on her hard Fortune which had engaged her liberty. The Knight carelesse of her honour and good, curling and accusing *Syricha* being sollicit for such a wretched Knight, whose speeches oftentimes was answered by the Maiden *Syricha*, a jesting wife would she turne her words of despiht into laughter, which was the sharpenelle of her wit, which then meanes vnfought, that might prevaile in the least manner her content.

Oppressed with griefe we leave the Princeesse for a while / to returne vnto *Diabitus*, whose Wedding day being come, great was the joy on his side, hee made the preparation of all Courtiers, who were ready with many costly flowers, at the Tilt, Turney, and other sports, to try their valour and fortune.

Armes. But as the fairest day is over-
cast with cloudes, so was their mirth
changed to great and grievous lamen-
tations, and their joy to sorrowfull com-
plaints, which thus befell.

The King now in prime of yeares,
desirous to try his force at the Tilt
with his presence, to honour his Nobles,
and doe the Princesse favour at her Mar-
riage in these pastimes, made choyce of
Love's Heroick Champion, to encounter
him as the worthiest in Armes, who
being of all others most, was willing to
deale against him, humbly besought his
Grace of pardon, and accept of some of
his Nobles who was worthier of that
honour. But the King, with whom no
intreaties might prevaile, would not be
denyed, which made the Knight with
great heavinesse of heart, so with he
had not armed him that day, such was
his discontented mind, which doubt-
lesse presaged some great ensuing evil,
as to the great griefe of all the whole
company hapned them. Thus when
no denials might prevaile, the

Trumpets sounding a charge, they
 forwards with such swiftneſſe, as the
 earth trembled vnder their horſes, both
 breaking their ſtaues in ſuch manner
 as all the company with joyfull ſhout
 applauded their excellent ſkill in that
 exerciſe. But alas (in midſt of this plea-
 ſing praſtiſe) how ſuddainly their joyes
 were eclipsed, woe is me to recount
 The King and his elected Companion
 at the Trumpets ſound, ſetting with
 courage forward to encounter one
 the other, in brave manner brake againſt
 their ſtaues, but in an vnhappy time
 a ſplinter of the Knights ſtaffe, by moſt
 vnfortunate chance (entered the light of
 the Kings Beaver) which pierced
 head to the braine, in ſuch wiſe, that
 with the heate of his trouble and griefe
 of the wound, he was enforced to for-
 ſake his horſe. This ſuddaine miſſun-
 to the company brought ſuch diſcon-
 rent, that all their mirth was laid aſide
 & ſorrow was Lady of the feſt. But
 amongſt thoſe that moſt lamented this
 vnfortunate chance, *Lords Heron*
Champion had his part, whole griefe

was such, that had not the Lord Diph-
 the been by fortune present, in the ex-
 ceasse of humelancholy passion he had
 slaine himself: such was the wisdom of
 the Noble Diphthe, whose reasonable
 perswasions prevailed so with him, as
 he caused him forsake his dolefull
 Lodge, to accompany him to the me-
 lance of the King whose masters of Chi-
 rurgery had newly ended the travaile
 of dressing his wounds, then the Knight
 questioned of the danger thereof, and
 besought them in carrelle to acquainte
 him therewith, whether he held it mor-
 tall or no, which how unwilling soever
 they were, as loth to discomfort the
 King or those which loved him, such
 was the courteous courtesy of the
 Knight, as he could not conceale the
 danger thereof, but revealed vnto him
 the lucke hopes they had of his life, and
 the reasons that induced them there-
 unto, which hee over Iusto passing
 vnto the Knight, who with many teares
 lamented the misshap, but grieve mini-
 sters no Physicks to be offered, nor
 more availe, nor to mitigate con-
 traints.

treames. Wherefore by *Diphilus* comforted, he cealeth in so exceeding manner to lament, determining to abide the Kings doome, vnto whom he purposeth to reconcile himselfe; and to that intent awaiteth the waking of his Majesty, who was after his dressing fallen a sleepe, whose griefe was such as he could take small rest. But rowling himselfe, awaked from slumber, called for the Lord *Diphilus*, who was waiting onely for the same purpose, vnto whom being come, he saith;

Diphilus, let no man boast himselfe of happinesse, which is mortall; for that they are Subject to crosses, and casual mishaps, as thy selfe most wittelle with me, and many others that have seen the mischance befallen me, when I least expected it, the original of my griefe proceeding from my selfe, which would perforce my good friend to the action wherunto he was fow willingly drawn but what Heavens have ordained, what man can gaine say? The Omnipotent power of the Almighty, hath laid his correction for my greater good, and

Loves Heroick Champion.

me from these worlds vanities, to see
his everlasting Kingdome ; Yet ere I
leave this fraile life, sweet *Diphilus*, let
me see that honorable Knight, by whose
hands death sent his summons, deare
he was vnto me, and his love worthy to
be imbraced of the mightiest Monarch.
Oa *Marianus*, couldst thou but ima-
gine with what faiehfull love I loved
thee, thou maist sorrow for my losse,
whom, thou and all the world cannot
reclaime from this great hazard where
in I remaine, with this the Knight
which was not farre off, presented him-
selfe vnto him, who kneeling at his beds
side, said ;

Most gracious Sovereigne, might
my grieved heart which overwhelmed
in sorrows, is sowced in a Sea of many
miseries consume it selfe with griefe, for
my evill committed against you, how
happy a creature were I, which have
beene the occasion of your Highness
great vnrrest, yet how vnwilling, Hea-
vens record with me ? And therefore
O my dread Sovereigne, pardon my
faule, so vnwillingly committed

against your Majesty, as deare to me as
mine owne soule, whose life, if ten thou-
sand lives depended thereon, I with
might be sacrificed for thy health, and
the loving Subjects of my gracious
Soveraigne, whom by my overhardi-
nesse, I have robbed of so loving a
Prince, Let me I say, chiefe cause of
your sorrow, reape the guerdon due to
a murdurer, and revenge your Kings
death, by taking my life, which had I
a million of thousand lives, could not
make satisfaction for my evill com-
mitted against you. Here teares inter-
rupting him, denying his tongue liber-
ty of speech, whose lamentation filled
all the Nobles with such heavynesse, as
for teares, they could not utter a word,
especially the King, whose griefe be-
ing great, was increased by his dolefull
lament, yet casting off this womanish
humour, drying his eyes, doubting the
Nobles and those present should accuse
him of feare, (dreading to dye) where-
unto we all are borne with a lost voyce
tend, by wringing *Loves Herbie*
Champion by the hand, he saith, Noble
Gentle

Gentleman, cease thy lament
 griefe so augmenting mine
 thought thereof wrings tears from
 my heart; thy unwilling offence with
 my heart I forgive, and to shew how
 deare in life thou wast unto me, (my
 good *Martinus*) accept of my dying
 hand, my Kingdome of *Hungary*, the
 lawfull inheritance of thy faithfull
 friend, love those people my kind Sub-
 jects, and so governe them with favour
 and lenity, as they have no cause to
 complaine of my dead corpse, and for
 my life, which by thy hand, through
 the appointment of him that gave it
 me, I must leave, I heartily forgive
 thee, and accused be he or them which
 shal ever impute ynto thee, in dishonour
 any fault against me committed. That
 I lovest me, my tender care of my good
 hath shewed such proofes, as tyed me
 in true friendship to be thine for ever.
 Death is not so irkefome unto me, but
 that I must leave thee, & the sweet con-
 tent I received in thy company, griefe
 of my deaths griefe, my owne *Mari-
 tianus*, compellat me to omit what I
 would

say, wherefore briefly thus, For
 my worthy dying friend, and shew that
 I have to the Lord *Diphilus*, whom for
 thy sake, I have to this Crowne of
Egypt advanced, as I ever fount, and
 in extreames comfort him with thy
 ayd as thou hast done me: My Sister
Tismaclea forget not, whom to thy
 charge I commit (leaving her to thee)
 and thee to be in my place a brother,
 who living loved her, as my hope is thou
 wilt. And so deare friends (Heavens
 blessednesse befall you all) & so prosper
 you, as I loved you. And you Peeres
 of *Egypt* and *Hungaria*, whose love
 I have found as Subjects in all dutifull
 manner, let be continued vnto these
 your elected Kings, who will with ho-
 nour governe you, so shall the giver
 of all happinesse blesse you and your
 lands, with the blessing of peace and
 plenty, for they that honour their King,
 both reverence the Lord who created
 him, and he will give them plenteous
 rewards. Noble Gentlemen, grieve not
 to see me off, flesh must yeeld to
 how loath soever the mightiest, death

know

hath vanquished. Therefore as
Martha remember my words,
 pray God to send vs the abundance of
 his grace, that we may through his mer-
 cy, have a joyfull meeting in his King-
 dome that never shall have end. I feele
 the heavy messenger approaching ther-
 fore Farewell to thee my deare Sister,
 whom I charge as thou lovedst me li-
 ving, be loving and kind to thy hus-
 band, doing him that honour is due vnto
 him, thy children bring vp in feare
 of their Maker, and to God blisse thee
 with happynesse. And thou *Marianna*
 vnto the no creature in life more deare
 remember my parting speeches, love
 the Lord *Diphilus*, as I have loved thee,
 and thou my adopted brother *Diphilus*
 honour him during thy life, that I am
 sure faithfully tendered and loved thee,
 so shall God be pleased for no sin in sight
 of his diuine Deity, is more tollerable,
 then that monstrous vice of ingratitude
 which for a voiding the heavy wrath of
 God, I wish thee to eschew. Noble and
 you all my good friends, to exhort you
 to reuerence your duties whole wil dome
 nation

I have I will receive, were
 never frivolous, and perhaps may
 give some offence, yet take my simple
 meaning (which I speak to you that
 have ever loved me) which love let
 be conserved. Honour your Kings
 with reverence and love, for when
 you do to them, is done to God,
 which are his Vice-regents on earth,
 and his annointed. Move no rebellion
 nor be maintainers of evil, for such
 faults, how secret soever, God will
 to your overthrow reveal. Remem-
 ber his word which hath commanded
 you to be obedient, without murmur-
 ing, and feare him, which governeth
 all. I say no more, my speech faileth
 me, therefore generally my Lords, Fare-
 well: and so turning his weake body to
 the wall, surrendered his soule to the
 Heavens from whence it had his being,
 to the insupportable griefe of all his Sub-
 jects, who with many brinish tears
 lamented his death, but especially the
 Knights, Bishops, and Bishops
 whole Monarchie the loving King be-
 neath

noured with his Funerall, which in the most honourablest manner, Art or honour could devise, was solemnized, lamented generally of all his Subjects, but especially the Egyptians, who more dearly loved him for his clemency, than their owne naturall King.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Loves Heroick Champion having settled the King Diphilus in his Kingdomes, well furnished with a Fleet of gallant Gallies arrived in Tachisland, and was welcomed of the Lord high Admirall Remnius, who met him in the Harbour.



He Funerall finished, a Parliament was summoned, in which at this time, *Loves Heroick Champion* prevailed with the

Nobles of *Thracia* and *Egypt*, that by common consent of the whole

Assembly

Assembly in both houses, temporall and
 spiritual, the Regiments of both King-
 domes was deliuered vnto the Lord
Diplolus, and *Robert Herick* *Cham-
 pion* resigned his Interest for ever to him
 and the Lady, who was lawfull inheri-
 trix vnto the same. The Parliament
 prorogued according to the custome of
 the Countrey, great preparation was
 made for the Coronation, which in most
 solemne and honourable manner was
 accomplished, with so many sundry
 shewes & delightfull pleasures, as might
 weary you to read. Let it suffice to the
 great joy of both Realmes, all things to
 so honorable an action, was so exquisi-
 tely performed, as no man but took great
 delight in beholding thereof, praying
 with an universall voice, for their long
 lives, to be in happinelle amongst them
 continued.

Thus all things to the joy of the
 Nobles, & the accomplishment, and to
 the high content of the King *Diplolus*,
 and the Queen by the aduise of *Robert
 Herick* *Champion*, an election was
 made

made of a Viceroy to goe for Hungary;
the King making choyce of two evils
the least, conceiving this opinion of the
naturall Subjects of Hungary, that
they would live in their lawfull obeys-
sance, when a conquered Nation, get-
tering head vpon many light occasi-
ons, was easily drawne to revolt.

These considerations with great wis-
dome weighed, the Lord Ferdinand, one
of the Privie Councell of Hungary, was
decreed for that government, unto whom
the King after his Commission signed,
and honourable patent given, so wisely
authorised to obedience, and care of his
love and duty, that as many of the Nob-
les as were present, and noted the
same, admired him, rejoycing that God
had provided so for them, to have them
in the government of so renowned a
Prince, of whom so much ensuing hope
was expected.

Order taken for his affaires of weight,
the Viceroy departed for Hungary,
and his Nobles departed in such order
vnto their severall Mansions, leaving
such of his privie Councell, as were
worthy.

were attendant at the Court. The Noble Marquis, was now to take his leave, the very remembrance whereof, was more offensive to the King and Queen, than all their former troubles. Boudelle it was to intimate his longer stay, who standing on choler, till his desire was obtained, in beholding the most beautiful Princess, might no longer be perswaded, wherefore the King to honor him the more, by whom he was for ever honoured, caused a Fleet to be prepared of twenty Gallies, whom by his strict commandment, was most royally furnished with all needfull vyants, and other necessaries for his voyage, which on such suddaine was percyved, it might well shew their diligence to whom this great charge was committed. At this time by the most sweet, and delicate wind blowing a fresh and comfortable gale, their friends were made to depart. The Duke of Orleans, the Prince of Condé, who with many others, were before him, the King with his court accompanied him to the water side, when

where his company appoynted to attend him, awaited his coming, where after heaue parting on both sides, and many searce spent of the commons which be held their scarrowes, he imbarqued himselfe, and by the good fauour of the winds, and diligent industry of his Marriners, suddenly lost sight of land, and had the wind favourable, that in short time they attained sight of the high land of *Tribulad* with which they did beate all that they might, yet could not possibly recover their Port that night.

This Fleet of Gallies being on the shore discried, none could imagine what they were or should be, to prevent the worst, the Counsell carefull of their owne safeties, and common good, assembled the power of that City, making provision for defence, what ever happened.

The Master of the Admirall, not daring to enter the Harbour by night, lay off againe into the Sea, haling with till the day watch was in land, at which time, they set Sayle to goe for their Har-

Harbour, and by favourable assistance of the winds, recovered the same. After the Sunne had shewed her selfe in her beauty two hourse, to survey which power, and give notice to the Queen what they were, the Lord Remmey Lord high Admirall of the land, was in a Frygot sent, who boughing as much as the force of his staues would permit him: being a man honourable and venturous, not knowing what they were, whether friends or enemies, came yp with the Admirall, and layd her aboard, of whose coming, *Loves Herick* *Champion*, being advertised, doing him duty, caused his Flagge to be furled, and his Ancient to be taken downe, whose order the whole Fleet followed. When the Admirall saw the Knight *Marianne*, whose welfare they greatly doubted, betweene them was much rejoycing and many embracings, as friends joyfull to see one the other, passing in pleasant parley the time, they came in Anchor, at which time, according to directions given by the Knight, all their Ordnance was discharged.

discharged, with their small Artillery
rejoycing according to the Sea manner,
for their safe arrivall, to the great ad-
miration of all the beholders; which
could imagine no certaine what they
were: no sooner was the Anchors a
ground, but the Lord Admirall cau-
ting his Frygot to come aboard, entered
the same, accompanied with *Lord Heroic
Champion*, and other Nobles of
Hungaria and *Egypt*, which came to
accompany him, as Ambassadors from
the King, who were all most royally
entertained of the Nobles, which at-
tended their landing, and were con-
ducted to the Court, where according
to their estates they were sumptuously
lodged in the Court, and like order
taken for purveying for their traine.

Amongst others that had enquired
the newes of these strangers, and what
they were, *Syritha* by chance, as
women are inquisitive of novelties,
had with diligence learned what these
Nobles so royally entertained were,
with

with the arrivall of *Doves Herald* Champion, who was no sooner known vnto the joyfull Mayden, (reade more joyfull by these happy tydings) but standing on thorns vntill she came to the preience of the Queen, doubting least her newes should be so stale before she came, as it would be scarce worth the carriage, she omitted no time. To whom being come, and finding the Queen in her accustomed melancholy passions, though now some way otherwise imployed about the imaginations of these strangers, to put her from her study, thus said,

What Madam, ever in your memorie, in faith were I of your privie Council, and might perswade with you, I would with your Majesty become Lady of some Nunnery, where you might have company, since nothing may delight you but contemplation.

Syritha, quoth the Queen, cease thy fond talke at this time, and give mee leave, who have matters of weight to imploy me on.

It is be so Madame, (quoth *Syritha*)

I am to crave pardon for my boldnesse
 otherwise, if it might not have bene
 offensive, I could have acquainted your
 highnesse with some newes of *Herodick
 Champion*, which because I
 see it is troublesome vnto you ha-
 ving businesse, I beseech your grace
 licence me to depart, vntill it shall
 please your Ladship to find leisure to
 heare me, on day now assigned.

The Queen hearing her name *Edward
 Herodick Champion*, was so waked from
 her dumps, as she called *Syritha*, and
 with earnest intreaties besought her to
 let her know, what newes she had heard
 of these strangers, and what moved
 her to name *Loves Herodick Cham-
 pion*.
 Madame, quoth *Syritha*, if your
 Ladship would have permitted me to
 speake, I had without farther delayes,
 acquainted you with such newes of these
 strangers, as I heare, and have diligently
 enquired, who are Nobles of *Hemp-
 shire*, Ambassadors for the King, accom-
 panied with the best welcomed Knight
 of *Africa*. The peerlesse *Marcellus*,
 your

your Graces sworne Servant, the naming
of whom, so revived the Queene, that
he that had the word light might have
perceived how pleasing these new
were unto her, yet doubtfull of the
Maydens speeches, which had delu-
ded her, to move delight, she said;

Syritha, thou hast had more plea-
sure in feeding me with vain hopes, than
hast contented me; yet have I borne
thy toiles, imagining in what sort they
were vsed. But now *Syritha*, leave
thy Jest, lest they grow odious, and
move me to choller against thee, which
would not willingly be drawne vnto
me. Therefore tell me without dallying,
my Knight arrived with these Nobles,
is there certaine rydings of his good
heale by these strangers.

Madame (*saith Syritha*) if my
unboldnesse have incurred your dis-
pleasure, I humbly crave pardon, which
had no intent to offend, but was
with me, which searcheth my de-
peth secrets, but to assure you

what you so much desire, know
 Madame, *Lovers Herick Champion* is
 with these Nobles arrived, who as I
 esteeme, are come from the Lord *Dyphi-*
us, who by procurement of *Lovers He-*
rick Champion, is married with the
 Princess of *Hungaria*, and is royally
 Crowned by consent of both Realmes,
 lawfull King of *Hungaria* and *Egypt*,
 the one, his Queens lawfull inheritance
 the other, the late Kings request, who
 by vnhappy fortune, hath left this life.
 Thus Madame have I acquainted you
 with what I have heard,
 the truth thereof being proved, I hope
 will procure my pardon. *Syritha*
 quoth the *Queen*, ten thousand
 times I thank thee for thy sayings,
 which I will so requite, as it shall be
 the best newes that ever passed thy
 mouth, to give thee some assistance
 thereof, take this Diamond, which
 she pulling off from her finger, de-
 livered to her, and looks for a better
 reward. The hasty approaching of
 the Councell, interrupting their
 speech, caused them cease their
 discourse.

farther parley, who staying the Queens pleasure, sent her word, they had some matter to impart vnto her, who were presently admitted to her presence accompanied with *Loves Heroick Champion*.

The Councell having done their duties, *Loves Heroick Champion* presented himselfe vnto her Majesty, whose sight so appalled her as she could say nothing, shamefast modesty striving with her, willingnesse to bid him welcome, which she could not doe as she would, lest her countenance should disclose her hearts desire, yet not omitting such honourable favour as she could doe him, she offered her hand to kisse, which in all humblenesse he accepted, acknowledging his most bounden duty vnto her highnesse, whom she questioned in this manner.

Servant, quoth she, we had thought your liking had been such to the Duke of Hungaria, that should have been invited to your Wedding. or that your entertainment had been so evil in our Court, as you were weary of the place.

that you have thus long absented your
 selfe from our presence, (under Brac-
 cets) Servant, as you owe duty to your
 Mistresse, make me your Ghostly Fa-
 ther, and before my Lords here present,
 tell me and dissemble not, what hath
 been the cause of your long stay.

Gracious Sovereigne, quoth the
 Knight, if I answer what is truth, I
 hope your Majesty will accept it, and
 pardon me; if in my harsh answer I
 passe those duties which I would not
 willingly doe. For my love to forraign
 Ladies, I may justly deny, which neither
 saw any since my departure from your
 confines, in whose presence I took plea-
 sure: During my long stay, how un-
 willing that hath been, I call to record
 these Noble strangers which can testi-
 fie my long desire to have rendered my
 dutifull service unto your highnesse,
 whereunto I am bound.

Therefore dread Lady, pardon my
 offence therein, who being at a for-
 eign Princes commandement, must
 obey it.

farther parley, who staying the Queens pleasure, sent her word, they had some matter to impart vnto her, who were presently admitted to her presence accompanied with *Loves Heroick Champion*.

The Councell having done their duties, *Loves Heroick Champion* presented himselfe vnto her Majesty, whose sight so appalled her as she could say nothing, shamefast modesty striving with her willingness to bid him welcome, which she could not doe as she would, lest her countenance should disclose her hearts desire, yet not omitting such honourable favour as she could doe him, she offered her hand to kisse, which he all humbly accepted, acknowledging his most bounden duty vnto her highnesse, whom she questioned in this manner.

Servant, quoth she, we had thought your liking had been such to the Queen of Hungaries as yet should have been invited to your wedding. or that your entertainment had been so evil in our Court, as you were weary of the place.

that you have thus long absented your
selfe from our presence, (under Brava-
rio) Servant, as you owe duty to your
Mistresse, make me your Ghostly Fa-
ther, and before my Lords here present,
tell me and dissemble not, what hath
been the cause of your long stay.

Gracious Sovereigns, quoth the
Knight, if I answer what is truth, I
hope your Majesty will accept it, and
pardon me; if in my harsh answer I
passe those duties which I would not
willingly doe. For my love to forraign
Ladies, I may justly deny, which neither
saw any since my departing from your
countrie, in whose presence I took plea-
sure. During my long stay, how un-
willing that hath been, I call to record
these Noble strangers which can testi-
fie my long desire to have rendered my
dutifull service unto your highnesse,
whereunto I am bound.

Therefore dread Lady, pardon my
offence therein, who being as a for-
eigne Princes commandement, must
obey it, and shall owe my duty.

Well-Servant, quoth the Queen,
 I must give credit to your words; she
 should doe you wrong, but howsoe-
 ver, you are welcome to your Mistress,
 who is a debtor of yours. The sight of
 this Noble Physician, wrought more
 effects then all the Medicines Art could
 minister, whose presence quite expelled
 all former cares from her Princely
 heart, though her body weakened with
 her long languishing, could not be so
 suddainly restored. But time, and short
 time, with the comfort she conceived
 of her loving Pincee, restored her to her
 former health, as you shall heare in the
 ensuing History.

Now returne we to the Nobles, who
 awaited her Highnesse pleasure, for
 which the Queen leaving of her speech
 with the Knight, thus saide

Honourable Lords, if it be not ma-
 ter of counsell, for which your com-
 ming is at this time, let vs know the
 cause, my Servant desires to be
 trust vnto, who shall particu-

these your affaires. Mightiest Princess,
(quoth the Lord *Timarchus*,) matter
of state concerning the government or
affaires of your Common-weale, we have
not to viter, but onely doe beseech your
Highness to command for your ho-
nour, that these noble strangers be en-
tertained according to their estates,
with such curtesie and bounty, that
they may have cause to speake of your
Court and honourable entertainment,
as of a worthy deserving Prince. And
more, so doe your Noble Subjects ho-
nour, the Lord *Diphilus*, who by
Marriage of the deceased Kings Sister,
is Crowned lawfull King both of *Hun-
garia* and *Egypt*. This is all most
gracious Lady, whereof if you please to
conceiue, and give order for the same
accordingly, you shall highly honour
vs your Subjects, and gaue to your
selfe the famous report of strangers,
which is the garment that beautifieth
Princes, and governours of States.

Thanks Noble Gentlemen (quoth
the *Queene*,) for your honourable

Care of vs, who are not acquainted with any such matters, wherefore I beseech you my Lord *Timarchus*, to keep them company during their stay here; let my Officers attend them; and their allowance be such, as may not impair our bountifull mind thereby to deserve honour, (if feasting be honourable) especially let their traine be well purveyed for both in large allowance of vyands and lodging, for those are they by whom fame will ring, being of the better sort, either of honour, or dishonour, as for their Ambassage, we will omitt heaving, vntill God endue vs with some more strength, and so farewell.

The Nobles having done their duties and gone, It may be imagined, whether the Knight departed with consent or no, on whom the Queen bellowed so gracious a looke, as he might well judge of his welcome, but command his longer stay he would not, to avoid the surmison of jealousy, or that her love would be in the least suspected. Content with the sight of her beloved, after their departure, commanding

manding the rest of the company from
her, demanding onely *Syritha*, between
them began some pleasant parley, when
first the *Queene*, and then *Syritha*,
defaunted at their pleasure of the
Knight, wanting no jesture he used
in his speech, his person, and what
else greatly delighted the *Princesse*, who
would often say, how minnerly is my
servant become? Yes quoth *Syritha*,
it is hard to say, whether he learned
the same of man or woman, nay on my
word, quoth the *Princesse*, I dare ac-
quit him, for any company keeping
with women, is M^y deny blunth, glin-
reth me that he hath learned no court-
ing fashions of the *Hungarian* La-
dies. (Grinde) quoth *Syritha*, and
Madams so ever believe, for a good
bolle, is a Reprovalation, or by my
holldome, your chiefest Chaplin is not
so just a man as he ought to be. Thus
pleasantly discouring, we leave them,
to recount unto you the royall enter-
tainment of the *Italian* Nobles and
their traine.

R. 3

The Lord Tamberlain, to whom the Queen had deliver'd this charge as you have heard, took such care in performance thereof, that as he was Noble, and every way endued with honorable conditions, so was his care, in discharge of that trust committed unto him, as the Nobles admired their royall cheer, their diversity of sports to beguile time, with costly shewes, each accident so exquisitely performed, as the thoughts and imaginations thereof, moved those strange Nobles, when the company had left them to their rest, in contemplating of their gracious entertainment, to consume sometime the most of the night, admiring the bounty of the Queen, whom they with earnest minds desired to see. As these Nobles consumed their time with pleasure, which made it seeme also shorter, so the Queen which had care for receiving their message, after the first sight of her Servant, began so to comfort her selfe, that with those comfortable confections her Doctors provided, and receiving such vyands as Phylick thought most meet

test, she began to recover her decayed
colour, and her faine Limbs over wake
with forbearing such sustenance, wher,
with nature should be relieved, reco-
vered their strength in such wise, as it
joyed her Subjects to heare of her reco-
very.

Time which overcommeth mighty
things, hath brought the Queen to that
good estate, as finding a day wherein
the Sunnes power, vanquished the wyre-
rumatick coldnesse, she walked into the
Garden, where she solaced her selfe,
beholding Natures abilliments, which
beautified the earth in such manner, that
the pleasantnesse thereof, with the
sweet smell, bred her great content.

happynesse, solace, joy, and contentment,
which she found in the Garden.

By this time, the Queen was recovered
of her sickness, and was able to goe
forth into the Garden.

And so she went into the Garden,
and there she found much pleasure
in the sight of the flowers.

And so she continued in the Garden,
till she was called in by the King.

CHAP.

How the Knight, waiting opportunity
 met the Queen in her Garden of
 pleasure, and their parley, and what
 happened betwene the Knight and
 Cynthia.

CHAP. XXX.

How the Knight, waiting opportunity
 met the Queen in her Garden of
 pleasure, and their parley, and what
 happened betwene the Knight and
 Cynthia.

THE Heroick Champion,
 which had desire to shew
 his duty in attending her
 royall highnesse, hearing
 this happy tydings, hasted
 to the Garden, whom the Queen
 so soone saw, but calling him vnto
 her, after his duty done and her Ma-
 jesty, taking him vp from the ground
 from of his knee, she said,

My Lord, what excuse can you frame
 for neglecting your duty to your
 Mistress, which cannot have your
 sight being in Court, without a messen-
 ger, in the sight of any one attending
 vs, be offensive vnto your Grace, we
 will remove them, rather then looke
 you

your company, so we may know
them.

Noble Princess, answered the Knight,
that I acknowledge not my duty as I
ought, pardon me, and weigh me in the
ballance of your gracious clemency,
my zeale and heartie desire to doe you
service: who albeit my heart desireth
no such happinesse as your Princely
prefence, yet knowing that Princes
have many eyes to behold them, and
Envie lurketh in the hearts of Subjects,
who imagining more then is on either
of our parts thoughts, may with their
evill speech raise that scandall, as may
blemish your renowne being a Virgin,
and procure my greater trouble, which
am a stranger.

Clearely caused, quoth the Queen,
I see now good servant, you have not
spend your state idly abroad amongst
and your school Mistris: I would
be fobold, verily think her, for
generally applying her Schollar
Madam, quoth the Prince, I am glad
to hear you. Erastus will dispose

I hope your Majesty having recovered strength, and your businelle with these Nobles overpast, will thinke of your service, and remember your word to me, which challengeth the same at your Majesties hands.

My Lord (quoth she) had I not held thy Love in regard, I could not have denied the many suites of my Peeres and Commons which have besought me, and with great earnestnesse entreated me to Marriage, but so deare hath thy love been unto me, that I desired death rather then falsifie my Faith to your Grace, for whom, and through whose unkindnesse, I have endured much heave discontent.

No more of that quoth the Knight (good Madame) expell from your mind passed griefes, and thinke upon the ensuing pleasures which will exceed all the discontent hath beent to heare your discontent is little pleasing unto me, who never closed those eyes, nor never beheld the rising of the glorious Sonne, without millions of times remembering your Grace, whose presence I most

desire

desired then I will explain. *Syritha* seeing some of the Councell entering the Garden gave them intelligence thereof, breaking off their speech thus;

Sir, if you have taken orders in holy Church since your departure, it is more than is expected of all the Church, which in time past have shewed your selfe so worthy in Armes to your lasting honour. If you have, and her Grace have chosen you for her Ghostly Father, joyne I beseech you, her Majesty to some easie penance, for her long sickness is not to endure much fasting; besides, here is of the Councell who hath waited to say something, either to the Queene or your Grace.

These words of *Syritha*, caused them surrease their talke, and with shewes of loving countenances, to give each other the Farewell. The Knight framing his talke to *Syritha*, who finding him alone, thus saide;

Sir, experience of mine own discontent hath taught me, what a corrosive melancholy is to a pleasant mind, by he is your

abuse have endured many sharp
words, yet, and oftentimes those thum-
ping speeches, lighted with blows
rather on my ribben head, or face (in
revenge of which) had you bin present
for whose sake I endured them, I should
have adventured the cracking of a
sword with your Grace, or greatly have
wanted if any will should stir me on.

Why how now Synda! (quoth the
Knight) art thou metamorphosed
from the Goddess, into the abili-
ments of a man, as well as armed thy
heart with courage? (Faith wench) art
thou so valiantly wounded redbreake
Blade? Take heed, tis dangerous for you
to deale with weapons, but I will desire
the Queene to save you, lest happily
as had a chance befall her Maides, as
Diana which accompanied Iupiter in
likenesse of a Swan, If Synda be like-
wise by their violence alienated from
heaven, it were good to prevent evils
to come, till I will, committe to thee.

And (quoth Synda) that I
will do, and will keep him from
any further harme, till he is safe.

misconstruing my simple meaning, which have ever honoured you: Conceale my folly in this good my Lord, & forget it, and pardon my fond words, which have felt many stripes for you.

Nay *Syricha* (quoth the Knight) I may not with mine honour let passe a matter of such importance, without revealing it unto her Highnesse, least your words (as you say) spoken in jest turne some of our Ladies in earnest to be beholden to mother Midwife.

The *Queene* which had reposed her selfe with beholding the beauty of Nature, and taken the pleasant syre which did greatly comfort her, having some conference with her Nobles, departed the Garden, which made the rest with all the speed they could make to follow, wherof *Syricha* was nothing sorrowfull, who was thereby compelled to leave the Knight, of whom she wished long before to have shift her hands.

The *Queen* gathering some strength, was about to destine the *French Nobles* any longer from her presence: wherof by her Nobles she lawde

time

time to heare them, against which
 were all her Nobles summoned to be
 Court, with her Ladies (and women
 most account) to attend her Majesty
 who with the Lord Steward of her hou
 shold had taken such order for all
 variety of vyands that might be pro
 vided. The day appointed come, not
 expected of the strangers, who provide
 themselves as sumptuous as they could
 apperelled after their Country manner
 attended the time of her Majesties com
 ming forth, who being come, and in
 her Chayre of Estate seated, word wa
 brought unto the strangers, who mar
 ching with the Nobles of *Treviso*
 through the Court, were in most ho
 norable manner presented unto her Ma
 jesty, who with countenance *debonnaire*
 and grace Majestieall, as became be
 royalty, had them all welcme in sum
 ptuous and Princesly manner, that the
 strangers at this first sight were driven
 to great admiration, beholding the
 Grace and honour in a Woman, which
 they would never have believed, but
 got their eyes being witness. The

Queen having given them these honorable welcomes, each man taking his place. *Petrarchus*, the chiefeft in Comiffion for their King, thus faid;

Magnificent Prince, our King, your Highneffe late Subject, acknowledging his humble duty to your Excellence, hath fent vs. his Liegemen and fworn Servants, to fignifie the fame; who in faithfull love voweth, never to be alienated in mind from that duty, which becommeth each naturall Subject to owe his Prince and Country. By vs he presents his offer, and fervice, which fhall be with all his power ready, as your Highneffe pleafure; the reft his honourable Letters fhall import, which humbly kiffing, on their knees, they delivered into her Princely hands, who returned many thanks to their King for his love, with like to them, which had vouchsafed that trayell (to fee her Court and Prefence) befecching them to take in worth a Maydens entertainment in doing which, fhe fhould think herfelfe much beholding ynto them.

With pleafant parley, and difcourfe

With pleasant parley and discourse
 of sundry matters and questions by the
 Queens propounded, touching these
 Countries, they passed their time untill
 Dinner, not without great admiration
 of the strangers which beheld her stat-
 ly Grace, her sumptuous attire, the de-
 ty and honour done by her Nobles and
 Ladies, which with their costly appa-
 rell and most rare excellence in Beauty
 greatly delighted them.

The time of Dinner drawing neere,
 the tables covered and all things pre-
 pared for the same, the Queens taking
 her place, the Ambassadors were like-
 wise placed at another table in her pre-
 sence. The manner of her service with
 the diversity of vyands of all sorts was
 such, as they could hardly believe, so
 many sundry kinds of Fowle, fish, and
 other cheere for them prepared, were to
 be found in the lynes of the court.
 Thus with great delight being welcom-
 med by her Highnes, they spent their
 time untill the end of Dinner, still ad-
 miring the Majesty of her Grace, which
 so highlye bare her, as no Prince in

her time could compare with her. Dinner ended, the Queene curiously bidding those strangers welcome, she was conducted by her Nobles into a Gallery, which for beautifull shewes with rare Pictures and devices of rich price, was so adorned as the strangers had never seene the like.

Not long had they passed the time in noting those glorious devises, but the Courtiers who had provided themselves to doe her Highnes honour, and cause her delight, which had so long time withdrawn her self from all pleasures: Armed in all parts with each man his severall device, they entred the yard appointed of custome for the Tilt, where a window opening fro the Gallery, the Queene with the strangers were set to behold these pastimes. The whole company come each one for honour of her Grace, delivered his Schiold, of device unto her Princely hands. Where Gentleman suppose you that know Ladies praises, or dispraises, what happened. Where to beguile the time, was each device by the Queene
 and

and her Ladies, surveyed with such vigilant eies, as nothing was unremembered, every one giving judgement according to that affection they bore the presenter.

While they were thus discanting, & the Marshall with the Judges, appointing each man in his degree to try himselfe, Behold, a pretty Page, mounted on a light running Courser, with his guide before him, winding his Horne in posting manner, coming neare the place where the Queen was, alighted from his horse, & being of heigh answerable, to deliver his Letters with his hand, putting them on his wand, (after his duty done) humbly kissing them, he delivered the vnto her Majesties hand; wch the Queen perusing, question'd him if he had ought else to impart. Who answered. Most famous Princeesse, my Lord and Master hearing of this assembly which Fame hath brined, to the honour of this Royall company, and high commendation of these Nobles hath sent (as now doing to approach the place without their lawful favour obtained) who for honour of his Majestie, which he affirmeth and

will maintaine) to be the most exquisite Lady for all perfections in þ confines of the earth : he offereth at the Tilt, with each gain-sayer, to breake sixe staves. If there be any such that will accept his challenge in mainraining his Mistresses honour, let me know him who shall soone be answered. The Page being ynknowne, the Nobles wondered what he might be, which without exception had made this challenge, imagining that he was some man of valor, and that it were discourteisie to deny a man at Arms what soever. Thereon generally concluding they returned him by the Page, this answer.

Page, though thy Masters peremptory challenge, deserve rather to be imaigned then accepted, yer such is the Nobility of Trebise, as honoring Arms & all professors thereof, accept the same, and where we had appointed every one his companion, we are content to remit that election, and to bend all our force to his dishonour, and so to him ynknowne, commend vs, whom we intend to Arme suddenly, and speed him hither.

The

The Page receiving this answer of the Nobles, the Queen calling him, which mounted, was ready to depart, said ;

Sir Boy, to thy vnknowne Knight commend vs, whom we thanke for vouchsafing vs that honour his Letters import, which our Nobilitie haue (without any sute of mine accepted) of whom we shall find men endowed with courage. The Page departed, sundry were the imaginations what the Knight might be, who had offered them this proud challenge, in midst whereof, a Trumpet sounding, they expected the Challenger, who entered Armed in all parts, with black Armour which was garnish'd with many wounded Harts on the breast a Lady with a cloth of fine Lawne whipping them, ever spreading as many as she could reach with a scarlet carnation coloured, his word (in *French* dispare not) pacing on with calm paces, according to the vie of the place, coming here that end of the Tille, which was opposite with the Queenes Window, bowing his head to her Majesty, she graciously bad him welcome, thank-

king

king her hand: Long had he not sayd
but the Lord Marshall in like manner,
with shew of great curtesie bad him
welcome, and desired him to prepare
himselfe for the defendantes attended
him.

My Lord (saith the Knight) at their
good pleasures, when they shall put
themselves forward at the Trumpets
sound I will meet them. Thus warning
given them, without longer stay the
Lord *Printhe*, his Copartner in *Bea-*
umont, set forward, whom *Leves He-*
rick Champion met with such force,
as his steed was too big for his stirrups,
and he likely to have taken a more dis-
grace being unhorsed.

This first encounter was noted of all
the Nobles, who commended his strength
feared him nothing, but with such
valour met him, that he made him to
his great disgrace, forsake the Saddle, at
which a general shoute (to the knights
great commendations) was given.

The Lord *Printhe* (having had
his part) another came in place, who
went his way without losing disgrace.

so generally behaved he himselfe and with such honour and valour bare him, that the Judges, Fathers of Armes, gave the honour of the day to him, whom they all (though a stranger) highly commended.

The Knight, comming before the Queen, humbly doing his duty, was with his Trumpet sounding ready to depart, whom the Nobles would not suffer without his knowledge, beseeching him not so much to dishonour them, of whom he had deserved honour, in such manner to leave them.

Loues Heriack Champion, who would as willingly have revealed himselfe, as they desired, though he made shew of some discontent, yet would not deny their request, but calling for his Armourer, opened his Beaver, who being known to be *Loues Heriack Champion*, they were all the more honoured, taking no disgrace to be foyled of him, by whose hands to many had lost their lives, who were honourable and expert in Armes. Being discovered, he presented himselfe to her Majesty, who not a little joyfull

of her Servants good fortune, whom she
graced in this manner. Servant (qud she)
thanks for your pains, and honouring
you at this time, for which I ensure you,
I think my selfe much beholdings, it had
been pittie, truant-like you should have
left these honorable Lords your friends
withoute having acknowledged you
selfe vnto vs and them, who you shall
see will be carefull to procure a Surgeon,
who doubtlesse shall cure those bleed-
ding heauis, if any such there be of skill
in *Trephond*. *Q* 2d: 2. miffic
Honored Lady (quoth the Knight)
this wellspring of civillie and blood
most humble thanks I yeeld your Ma-
jesty for this Grace, without whose
favours and graces, to whom in duty
I am so bounden, I desire not life. This
saide the Queen and the strong Nobles
departing, supper being ready and they
at their Table talke was of the brave
behaviour of the Knight, who had
all the honor attributed to him, that
was to be required, wherein the
strangers were joyrd, loving him dear-
ly, and to increase the Fame which

Q 2

Generally

generally was given him, they in presence of the whole assembly, declared the honours her Majesties Champion had gained in *Hungaria*, and *Egypt*, with the death of their King, who of a wound by his hand at the Tilt dyed leaving nothing unspeaken, which might in any way honour him, whereof the Queen joyed not a little, though he contended the same. Supper being ended, and some part of the night spent in dancing, masking, and other Court-like pastimes: the Queen commending the Nobles to their rests, had the company good night, and entering her bed-chamber, it might have joyed the heart of any Lady in love, to hear the generall laud of the Ladies given to *Lovely Elizabeth*, with *Champion*, of whom no other talk was to be heard, each honorable part in him commended to his desert, and of his valor in Armes, no praise was sufficient: wherewith the Queen was not a little pleased, nor Syria discontent, to hear the onely prize of honour given her Lord, by whom she had hope for her passed service to be preferred. Thus

joy-

joying on all parts, we leave the Queen with her company to their rests, and returne to the noble strangers, whose commendations and honorable reports of the Knight was such, that nothing could be more pleasing unto them, applauding the wisdom and noble demeanour of the Queen, whose like in her time, was not as they supposed to be found: with such sundry discourses, passed these Nobles the night, to which we leave them for a time.

These Princely pastimes overpast, the care of the Queen was for dispatch of the Nobles of *Hungaria*, whom she was loth to detain from that desire they had to see their country. Wherefore after some two or three dayes spent in discoursing of their Countries, and state of their Realms, with the commodities thereof, chisooner entreasing their discourses with some pleasant parley, wherein the Nobles were much delighted, the Queen took order with her Counsell for their answer, limiting a time therefore to the good content of the strangers. Against which prefixed time, the Queen having

care of her honourable word, had their Letters all written and signed, when omitting them to a Banquet, shee in such honourable manner delivered their answer, with such words of love, and desire of good to their King as overcome with joyes thereof, the strangers were not able long time to answer, presenting their King and Queen with gifts of high esteem, and highly rewarding their honourable paines, which they gratefully accepted, taking order for Gallies with victualls, and other necessaries, to be purveyed with speed and bounty.

This honorable entertainment of the Queen to those strangers, being in the prime of her government, gained her such honor through their reports, that those which heard the same, admired her, whom they imagined was Peerlesse for Wisdom, bounty, and clemencie, not wanting the favour and love of the Nobility, of whose worthinesse, they could never speak sufficiently.

benignus in LNA. His other son
 who was named *James* was a
 who was named *James* was a

XXXI
 How the Nobles of Hungarie, having
 received great favours and graces
 from the *Queene* and her Nobles
 they departed. The *Queene* soon
 moved the *Parliament*, in which the
 State did consent that she marry
 her *Love Heroick Champion*, and so
 the *Conquered King* and *Queene* of *Frederick*
 and *Carmatia*.



Some Smitheth the great
 taskmaster, for the care-
 full service of those to
 whom the provision of
 the Fleet was commen-

ded, was such, that there was no want
 in those time left unpurposed, that
 lacking nothing but a fair wind, which
 he had commandeth wind and Seas, sent
 in such happy time, as they could wish,
 which not willing to loose, they
 commend the health and happy go-
 vernment of the *Queene* to him

that ruleth all. And so accompanied with *Loves Heroick Champion*, who was loth to leave them, and many other Peeres of the land, they were conducted each one to his severall Galley, where being imbarqued, their Sayles cut, and they afore the wind, they gave their farewell, with such a blaveringing peale of great Canon, and then likewise their small Artillery, as wonderfully rejoyced the beholders, which by the Gunners from the *Lucens Fort* shore, was as worthily answered. Thus parted these Nobles, who in short time arrived in safety in *Egypt*, with their King unto whom, having delivered the Princes presents with their letters, they omitted no reports of their honourable entertainment of the *Queen* and her Nobles, in such a manner, that where they or any of their traine long time after became, their tale to take, was onely of their honourable welcomes in *Towne*, ever applauding the Magnificent Grace, wisdom and Bounty of the *Queen*, whom they gave the Praise unto, of all that lived in her time, leaving

† D

nothing

nothing vncremembered, which might
any way implure the honourable repu-
tation of her Nobles, which vled them
with all the currelie and bounty be-
comming their estates: but especially
Loves Herick Champion, the discourse
of whose valour and manner of beha-
viour, bred more delight then the rest,
for that the Nobles and commons had
knowledge of his valour and worth-
nesse.

These honourable commendations
of the Nobles, joyed the King, who in
his secret thoughts applauded her high-
nesse favour and currelie, that for his
sake and honour, had vled those his
subjects in all Princely manner. But
amongst those which took pleasure in
hearing those discourses of the Nobles,
the Queen inflamed with their reports,
burned with desire to see this Peerlesse
Princesse, as the Second part of this
History shall shew you. Till when,
leaving the King with his Peeres to
their solace, returne were *Troisfontaines*.
Where the Knight imboldned by
the favour of his gracious Lady,

was not least a stranger with her
Highness, but that he might at pleasure
repairs to her presence, with whom
by his earnest sute, and desire to be
possessed of her whom he so much lo-
ved and honoured, he egged her on still
to marry, which for she would not doe,
without a general consent of her No-
bles and States of the Realme, she cau-
sed a Parliament to be summoned, at
which time, finding her fit opportunity,
she imparted her determinations in this
manner.

Honourable Lords, and you our
ving Commons here assembled, let me
chole few words I have to say unto you.
Breed any discontent, that will delive
nothing dishonourable to my state, and
your discouragement, to with hold you
from the same long, were more niceness
then wisdom, wherefore briefly
thus.

Whence I was by permission of
him that exalteth and pulseth down
Princes at his will, I am by your ho-
nour be and peace all contents, Craw

and Queene of this Realme, so whose
government you have as lawfully de-
scended from him whom you all loved
and feared, committed your selves, li-
thences which you have all with shewes
of honourable love, and care of our state
and Realmes by sundry examples per-
suaded me to marriage, which you say,
may breed your happynesse, who e good
he that seareth my hearts secrets,
knoweth that I more preferre then my
life on whose futes so often made. I
have advisedly considered, and seeing
the many perils incident to our Sexe,
which rather require to be governed,
then to governe, the nation of King be-
ing feared, honored and loved through
fear, when they hold our Sexe in con-
tempt, all which considered, with your
former futes, I grant to your request,
I doubt not, but I shall find that favour
which the poorest of my Subjects have
freely to choose, where their loves and
likings leadech them, which if you
grant, I shall hold my love well bestow-
ed in you, and shall have cause to
thinke your request in times past hath
bene

been honourable, and nor to eye me to
any inconvenience, assuring you, that
what ever he be other I shall bend my
liking unto shall not disparage my e-
state, nor dishonour you, but be worthy
for Wisdom, valour, and what else is
required in honourable persons, to make
the Princess of most renowne on the
earth. You have heard what I have to
say, and wherefore chiefly this Parlia-
ment was summoned, of which I crave
your answers.

The Nobles and Lords both spiritual
and temporall, with the Commons of
both houses, hearing the Queens mo-
tion, were all mute, nor knowing sud-
denly in a matter of such weight what
to answer. But removed from their
dumps, the Speaker being both wise
and well demeaned, as becometh his place
humbly prostrating himselfe, thus said;

Most gracious Princess, albeit your
Majesties request to this honourable
house is no more then we have humbly
sought, yet pardon our sudden answer
and give us respite of time untill to-
morrow, the remaine of this day, for a

stage

stand with your Princely favour, shall
be prone to heare the censure of all E-
states in their presence, whose love and
duty is such, as they will deny nothing
wherein your royall and honourable es-
tate is not disparaged, but in all things
will with all humblenesse subject them-
selves to your Highnesse pleasure.

The *Queen* loath to require such haste in answering her question, graciously commanded him to rise, granting most willingly to his demands, for which the whole assembly with a small voice, gave her *Grace* most humble thanks. *Caesar*, *Junius*, *Brutus* &c.

10 The Lucene having delivered the
summe of her desire, graciously com-
mending them to his will, chae forth
all things accompanied with a company
of her Porters, departed, vñ ni mēdēd

21 The Queene departed, all matters in question laid apart, the Peeres and most chiefeſt of both houſes aſſembled themſelves in Council, where you muſt ſuppoſe no matter for the benefit of the State was omitted. The requeſt made by their Queene, with great advice con-

considered, which amongst them was
admired; where many imaginations
assailed them, devising of each his
what he should be that is in so high a
favour and grace with her Grace, and of
such worthy reputation as she hath re-
ported him; each ones naming one, then
some other, yet the principall object of
her love never remembered, which
deave them all to a wofull end.
But what ever he were, time of their
own desire to answer, craved some dis-
patch of what they had in question.
Wherefore leaving frivolous questions,
they proceed to their begun action, glad-
ly would they have bene certified of
their elected King, but in vain it was for
them to require it. Wherefore considering
their own desires, they thought it would
be taken in evill part of her Highness,
to gain say, what with such humble
and earnest suites they had required,
assuring themselves of her Wisdom,
government and care of their goods,
which was so wise, and every way so
honourably detained; which consid-
ered, thereupon relying it was generally
determin

ned, to referrē all to her own will, pleasures, and good liking. On which resolved, the chiefest of the Nobility, accompanied with divers of the Clergy, in hope of the Queen's good acceptance, speedeth them to the Court, who suddenly was advertised of their being, with their request, which was, to have access to her Highness. No sooner was her highness thereof certified, but leaving her Chamber where she was busily employed about those businesses which she had in hand, devising of the answer of the Commons, leaving all, she speedeth her vnto them, where taking her place, their duties in all humbleness done, and she with all honourable courtesie requited it, the Speaker in presence of the whole assembly, thus said;

O Dread Sovereigne, the Lords both spirituall and temporall, with commons in this honourable Parliament assembled, weying with care and wisdom the honour of your highness, and carefully tendering the weale publique, have with great care of both

(the premises) considered, with your Majesties request, albeit they have no knowledge of his honourable person, unto whom your royall liking is united, yet relying on your Princely wisdom, and care of your Subjects, by whose welfare their happinelle is to be maintained, with one uniall consent they willingly subject themselves unto your Highness will and pleasure, assuring your Grace, that whom you shall vouchsafe to endue with title of Lord and husband, they will accept for their Sovereigne, and will in all humbleness acknowledge with loving hearts their duties unto him as to their lawful King by your Majesties election. Thus my gracious Lady, have they willed me to say in behalfe of themselves, and most humbly beseech your highness, to make knowne unto them the same so honoured, which you have vouchsafed to like to the end they neglect not that duty which is due unto him by your good Grace.

The Queen hearing this answer of

her Commons, was more joyed and in heart contented, then ever she was since the death of her Father, her loving Countenance shewing the content of her heart, so long discontent, which made her with most lovely grace and curtesie, so say she will be content.

My Lords all, and you of the Commonalty, you have in yielding to these honourable motions by me made, highly contented her, whose desire in Love made me not so headstrong to consent without your generall liking, my choice being such, as may be mated with the onely Lady of highest esteem in this world, as I doubt not you shall well conceive, when she shall be brought unto you, I say, high esteem of this layd a part, for that you may say, Affection is blind. And as the Poet the Sauty, *The Negro by nature, black and foolish, yet an eye for his love, hee doth see*, so Love, which commands all creatures, caused many Princes and Ladies of worth, to submit themselves to base estate, imperious loves overmastering their hearts. In which you

that my liking is not such, and to fau-
 sic you, which with your own con-
 sent hath contented me. Know your so
 elected Sovereigne, and he that I have
 subjected my love unto, is of no lesse
 worth than a Prince, royally borne, and
 descended from the loynes of a King
 famous, and a Queene endowed with
 much honour, himselfe shewing his
 royall discom by his demeanour, which
 is valiant, wise and courteous, such a one
 I know your desire is to chuse for
 your Sovereigne. All affiction for such
 such a one have I chosen, which shall
 cause all your joyes, if you joy in my
 good. While breaking off their speech
 with other words of civillie, yielding
 their great thanks, she called Syritha
 whom she commanded to send some
 trusty Messenger for the Prince, willing
 him, all businesse set apart, to repaire
 unto her, which done, framing pleasant
 discourse which delighted the Nobles,
 she sought to their content to be quite
 the time, untill the messenger retur-
 ned, which made such hast, that he
 found the English Prince, whom he
 had

impe

imparted the Queene's pleasure, which
albeit the suddenness thereof was
troublesome unto him; cloying his
head; devising of sundry matters,
which her hasty sending for him should
import; yet neglecting no time, hee
speedeth him to the Presence, where to
the Queene hee was the welcomnest
man living as her countenance declar-
ed; who calling him unto her, com-
manded a Chayre to be brought, and
seated him on her left hand to the ad-
miration of all the beholders; which
done, she said;

My Lords, and you our loving sub-
jects, muse not at this unwonted fa-
vour used to this Gentleman; nor re-
pines not; for that is it your owne free
and my choyse, and hee that I have
sworne my Love and loyalty affecti-
on to; who albeit hath this long sub-
jected himselfe to our service, doing us
many high favours; as your owne eyes
can witness; induced/whed in by this
high Commander of men, who hath
procured many Princes to the like
for our Love; as I am assured, hee

Abandoned his Kingly Seat, disguised in
the base attire of a Merchant, came to
our Court, where what honours he hath
gained by his valour and curtesie, not
one of you but know. *Cornelia*, being
his native Sayle, and the Kingdome his
by lawfull descent from that King his
Father. Let it not dismay you my
friends, nor judge my words spoken of
him for his honour, to be more then
truth, so shall you wrong him, whose
worth you may be by my reports as-
sured of, and injury but which had never
intent, but to deserve well of you all.
Therefore as you have your doubt know-
ing him, in token of your love and ge-
nerall content, by whom he is your a-
dopted King, shew by your signs of
content, how pleasing my choyce and
liking is vnto you. *Sued you should*
The Nobles smiled at the *Queenes*
speech, although they could hardly be
induced to believe what she had said, yet
such was the devotedly honourd her,
with this giving credite vnto her words,
without long argument of the matter, that
the *Queen* might thus rather be won to
credit

credit their former speech; with a vni-
versall voyce, prostrating themselves
before him; they cryed, G O O SAVE THE
King and Queen, vowing unto him
loyalty and fealty, as unto their King
and Sovereigne.

Thanks good my Lords, quoth the
Prince, for your good contents; and
doubt not of my love to you, which
with such hearty affection shall be shew-
ed, that my dearest blood shall be shed,
or the least hurt of the basest of your
head shall reach. Which said the Queen
standing vp, requested the Nobles, that
as they had with consent elected I. her
their King, so they would appoyne the
time for solemnizing the marriage with
the Congregation, changing his name
from M A R T I N O V S, *Edward Heroick
Champion*, to A R M A T V S, the lawfull
heire of the Germanian Crowne, for
that was his right, and the cause of
disturbance but vnder the colour of
which request of her Majesty they
easily granted, appoyning the day
and place following, to witte
the

Coro-

Coronation presently to follow, which
 to their great joyes was accomplished,
 with all the honour might be done by
 their Subjects, the costly shows, and all
 manner of, delightfull pastimes there
 vied, I omit, albe it it was pleasing both
 to their King and Queen, and brought
 great joy and comfort to all beholders.
 The marriage with the Coronation past
 the Commons delighted with their
 King, assured his Grace, to be so hono-
 rable as the Queen had reported him,
 and shew found, who in that Parliament
 to honour the *Treasures*, the more,
 and let them know, his love was no
 whit inferiour to theirs, he entailed the
 Crowne of *Germany*, to the lawfull
 heirs of *Treasures*, according, assuring
 them, that his Nobles and Com-
 mons, should confirme and assure the
 same. *which* courteous favour, the Peers
 and Nobles so gratefully accepted, as
 they returned him for the same, many
 gracious thanks, the Parliament pro-
 rogued, according to the custome of the
 Country, their duties well humbly

nelle done, the Nobles, with the chief of all patrimonies in the Land, wished the Queen and King many happy dayes, for their joy and hearty content: which they requited with such showers of love, as might delight them, and give them cause to joy in their Princes election, of whom their comfort was great, and their assurance of Tranquillity with forraigne Princes, through his magnanimity, to be such, as all true subjects might have pleasure to receive: Their leave taken, every one departed, well content to his owne home.

the aged *Macbaen* in *Trebisond*, who with his long travell came vnto the Court, where wandering Pilgrim-like, living by the devotion of bountifull people, he spent some time in contemplation; others in viewing the beauty of the Court, and manners of the people, effoones commending their Religion, and serving their Creator: taking much pleasure in discoursing with such Pilgrim-strangers as he met, of the diuers conditions of those Nations, whose Countries he had scene, which being many, he affected no Princes Region, as this Countrey of *Trebisond*.

This grave and ancient aged Father, overworne with griefe and tedious long travell, was so much altered in his face, as he that (in former time) had well knowne him, might very well now have mistaken his feature: which made the King (who sometime had adored his comely person) his Pilgrims attire, and other Ornaments, no Religious belonging, greatly to affect him, little suspecting it was the aged *Macbaen*.

But as time revealeth guile and

and bringeth friends to knowledge, so the King taking pleasure, beholding this Pilgrime, noted him so often, that his Phyſiognomy to his memory, presented the feature of his beloved *Machaon*, which imagined thought, began to take such roote in the King, as he greatly desired to have some conference with the Pilgrime, evermore perſwading himſelfe that it was his noble Tutor, and carefull Phyſitian.

To assure himſelfe, and the better to be reſolved of that doubt, he determined to have ſome certain knowledge of the aged man if he might, and for that intent, cauſed his Pages to give diligent heed, if they ſaw him in the Court, to bring him tydings thereof, which they did according to his Majesties commandement, attending with ſuch care, that y^e ſmall time he was accuſtomed to ſome, that he ſeemed not of them to be perceived, till at length they gave the King intelligence, by whole command he was ſummoned to his preſence.

The aged Pilgrime at his firſt ſummoning of the meſſenger, was in ſuch a ſtate of weakneſſe, that he was ready to be offered him,

he greatly feared some ill to befall him, well knowing that Princes have many eyes, and Strangers are markes, how poore soever their estates are, especially frequenting the Court as he did, yet he whose conscience could not accuse him of any evill intent against the King, had this hope that God whom he served, doth protect the innocent, and would deliver him.

Thus casting his care on him that commandeth Kings, not without many imaginations what should be the cause he came vnto the Kings presence, vnto whom as one that knew his good, he prostrated himselfe, praying most heartily for the Kings prosperity.

The King which saw the old man bowing before him, kindly tooke him from the ground, tendering his age, which he honoured, whom the more he noted, the more the lovely face of his beloved *Machaon*, presented it vnto his memory, the thought of who, caused his hart to much sorrow, yet shaking off the griefe, of Father, Kingdome, & friend, he said, Aged Father, in whose face appeareth gravity, tell me of y^e durtfull love y^e

owest thy most beloved friend, of what Country thou art, & what fortunes hath brought thee to this Region; that honoring thee, whose age requirerh the same, I may further thy iutes if thou have any, or wanting wealth, I may relieue thee. The wofull Pilgrime, revired by those honorable speeches of the King, said;

Renowned Prince, the mirror of honour, of whose fame the world is filled, to satisfie your Excellence, know, that occasions of importance thereunto moving me, I forsooke my native Country in learch of those whom my fortune was never yet to meet, yet have I travailed many Kingdomes, and in my travell, have seen many Princes Courts, and noted their severall demeanors, yet most gracious Soveraigee, never took I pleasure in any, as in this Country of *Trebisond*, the Nobles especially giving me cause to admire them, whose minds shew their true Gentility, as the fruit maketh the tree known, in which taking delight, I have though more then beseecheth a stranger, so often frequented thy Court; wherewith: if your Grace take any offence, I humbly beseech your pardon.

don, which am now ready to depart.

The King, which had heard that tongue so often reade him many Lectures, and given him instructions of honour, was not deceived in him; albeit he forbore to acknowledge him whom he desired so heartily to see, vnto whom he was more welcome then any man living, yet concealing himselfe, he said;

Father, thanks for thy love, and honorable report of our Realme and people, for which I rest thy debtor. But tell me aged man, of what Country art thou? and what account were those friends with thee, whom thou with such overweary travell hast sought; whether thy allies, or thy friends by adoption.

At this motion of the King, the old man overcome with the thoughts of those of whom his pittifull tale was to be told could not forbear teares, which with such abundance of bitter sobs and heavy sighs were vttered, insomuch that it moved the King to great wrath, seeing those silver haire which he honoured (bedew'd with salt drops, the outward witness of his inward discontent. Wherefore like the careful

R 3

Physician

Physician, having ministred bitter Pilles to his Patient, seasoneth the same with some sweeter taste, he comforteth the aged *Machaon*, with words so pleasing, that it cheared the old man, yet would not pardon his report, which caused him to say;

Famous King, if pity of my old age may any way move you, vige not my faltering tongue to vtter a tale of such ruth as it importeth: the remembrance wherof over cloyeth me with extreame sorrow, and will bring your Excellence but small delight.

Therefore, Sovereigne Prince, pardon me, which cannot reveale the truth of so pittifull a tale, (as yet) without the hazard of my life, my heart so overcharged with griefe, that to thinke thereon, draweth me neare to death, then pardon me:

But how loath soever, the King might not be intreated, whom with such pleasing speech he forceth on, that comforted by his Majesties kind words, where he would not gainsay: he said further nothing may perswade your Excellence to pity me, accept in worth my rudeness,

ness, and pardon it. Which said, humbly doing his duty, as one that could his good, he thus proceeded;

Dread Lord, know *Carmania* is my native soyle, where through the Grace of my thrise noble Prince, I consumed my youth in all happinesse, favoured by his favour, with the best of account in that Region, and so graced by the King, that hee committed the Government of his deere Sonne, more deare to him then life, to be trained vp by mee, of whom, as duty willed me; I had that care as is required of a Subject vnto his Lord, joying in nothing, as world possesseth, so much as in the so-wardnesse of the Prince, whose vertuous youth, might be a Lead-stare to all that ever saw, for courtlie marchelles, bountifull as *Tymon*, more valiant then *Hector*, or the best deserving that lived, cunning was he in the liberall Artes, what should I say of him whose honourable praise, no tongue can with such commendations utter, as his honours and vertues requireth, so generally beloved of all men, that death is more sweeter to many thousands of his

Subjects, then the remembrance of that Noble Prince. Here teares restrained his speech, that he could not utter a word, standing so astonished, that he rather represented the Image of Death, then a living creature, who the King put from his heavy passion thus:

Father, thou hast filled my heart with a world of wonders, at thy strange talke, which I conjure thee, of that love thou owest the Prince, whom thou sorrowest so to remember, not to leave in such abrupt manner, but proceed: dyed the King and the Prince, so of thee honoured, and thorough their deaths gain thy travell. Say sweet Father?

Though the reporting of this dolefull History, more grievous vnto mee, then death, should finish my dayes, yet such is the penance by your Majesties conjuring speech enjoyned me, that what griefe soever I endure. I will satisfie your Grace,

The Prince, Oh my Lord, that it would please you to pardon the rest, growing to yeeres of amercion, I know not through what meanes, neither could I for all the diligence I vsed, attain vnto it,
but

but sick he was and so oppressed with such a strange agony, that no Physick could minister reliefe vnto him, nor yeeld him any ease; so that there was small hope of his recovery, the strangenesse of each malady being such, as sometime faring like a man frantick no perswasions of reason might prevaile with him, who in his health was to be ruled in all things. This passion so long assailed the Prince, and so little hope of his recovery, that the extremitie thereof, gan touch the King and *Queene* mother, whose carefull love was such, as nature could not require more in parents whatsoever. The continuall griefe of the Prince, wrought such care in the aged King and *Queen*, that it was not to be found which of them was most grieved or whose lot it was to give his due to death first: yet as no care is so great but hath some comfort, so the command of men, when all hope of life, was past hope of men, restored the Prince to health, and by his health recovered the King and *Queen*, for whose weale, the Commons more rejoyced, then of their own good, so that a generall joy

was throughout the Realme, triumphing at this happy recovery of the Prince, the King and Queene. But as the fairest day is overshadowed with clouds, so was the Sunshine of their joy eclipsed, through the great folly of the Prince, who unknowne of all men, or acquainting any with his pretence, left his Father, Crowne, and Subjects, and liveth no man knoweth how, or where; for whom the King felt a million of woes: griefe so assailing his aged Corps, as he was like to rest with death, but reason subduing affection, he recovered his sicknelle, and leaving his Land without a Governor, likewise departed, whither no man knoweth.

The mother Queen, being of nature but weake, resigned her due to death, whom as duty commands me, I entombed with such honour as becometh the person of a Queene; and so perswaded with the commons in a Parliament, for the same intent called, as the government of the Realme was committed to sixe of the Nobility, who are bound to resigne their authority, when the lawful successour shall require it.

Which

Which done, I forsooke all I enjoy-
ed, and Pilgrim-like (as your Highnes-
ses) have travelled many Countries and
Kingdomes in search of my Sovereign
the Prince, but for all the diligence I
can use, of them can learne no ty-
dings.

Thus with teares standing in his eyes
he ended his lamentable History, which
the King was assured to be true, but least
was the thought of *Machabees*, that
he delivered this dolefull tale to the
Prince: which had likewise some cause
of griefe, which so neare touched him-
selfe, as he could not for teares use
what he would, yet putting by his pas-
sions as he could, he said:

Aged Father, matter of great ruth
hast thou delivered, which to heare is
most lamentable, and may touch the
carelesse Prince neare, by whom this
chance is chanced his Parents and Sub-
jects: But tell me Father, all griefe layd
apart, in what state liveth the Subjects
of thy King, vnder their government
with the charge.

Yet is not your Grace satisfied (quoth
the Pilgrim) but will exact on me more

To encrease my griefe, which seeing you
delight in. I shall vnfold that which
in recounting, will finish all; yeelding
my breath to him that gave it me, there-
fore attend.

Not long since, vnkown, I chan-
ced to accompany in my travell, a Gen-
tleman of *Germany*, to me well known,
which for I saw I was out of knowledge
with him, I questioned him of many
matters, as your Grace hath done me,
which amongst other his newes of dis-
content, reported that those elected go-
vernours, whose hearts brayling with
ambition and desire of the whole autho-
rity, as the side of King, to the ambiti-
ous is sweet, so these covetous wretches,
taking part one with the other, some en-
clining one way, some to the other
part, that civill discention was raised;
where the Father bare Armes against
the Son, the Son against the Father, and
kinsman against kinsman, one imbruing
their hands in others blood, through
which, many a woman is left Wid-
dow, and many a sweet Infant fatherlesse,
which makes me greatly feare, without
his helpe that sendeth all helpe, some
help.

helplesse, the land will be impoverished, and our King and Prince returning, shall from their proper right be debarred, by these vsurping villaines, whose hearts my aged teeth in revenge of their treachery and wrong done the Commons, I could teare. The Prince hearing this tale of discontent, was moved more at the wrong offered the Commons, then all the former History, which made him say;

Father, I have noted thy long tale, which hath moved me both to sorrow and delight, grieved for the commons oppressed, yet joying that any Prince should have a subject of such worth as is rare in these times to be found; wherefore Father, that thou maist live in my Court to draw others to their fidelity to their Prince, I will here detain thee, and for thou lovest that castle Prince Armaraw, will honour thee during my life, enduing thee with Treasure, and what else thou shalt any time command, for all I enjoy is thine; and if hereafter thou shalt thinke it convenient, I will with a strong power, enter their distressed confines, and challenging those Rebels,

leave

leave that Regent in their place, vnill further tydings shall be of thy King or his Sonne, whom I am sure will not abuse them.

The aged Father, hearing those honourable speeches from the mouth of the King, was astonied, knowing well that Princes of esteem honor themselves, holding their words, yet not minded to give over search for his Sovereigne, he returned the King humble thanks, beseeching his Highnesse to pardon him, which hath vowed to end his life in performing his vow to the Prince, and either heare tydings of him, or neuer see his Countrey, the place of the world most pleasing vnto him. The King hearing his words, having great experience of his fidelity, could conceale himselfe no longer; but embracing him in his armes, bedewwing his aged haire with drops like raine, he said,

Faithfull *Marbon*, the mirror of true friendship, whose equall in love is not to be found, what cause have I to honor thee, whose care is such of me, that have so ill deserved, but forgive me *Marbon*,
my

my misse against thee committed, forgive mee Noble Father, and you Subjects of *Carmania*, who by mee vnhappy creature, have been so much wronged, and thou *Machaon*, my carefull Tutor, forgive me I entreat, and continue thy love vnto me vnhappy Prince, whom thou hast now found, which for thy fidelity hath vowed to honour thee, as hereafter my deeds shall manifest. Wherefore after thy weary travaile, rest thee with me in *Trebi*, send. where thou shalt be a Second *Armatius*, for never will I live longer, then to be held a friend and perfect lover of thee, which with such carefull travaile, truth and loyalty hath shewed thy selfe so firme a friend. *Machaon*, as a man whose senses was beraved, standing long time staring in the face of the King, as a man ravished, beholding with good advise, his Physlogomy, when through his long view, by a secret signe he had knowledge of his Sovereign, such sudden joy assailed him, that overcome with the same hee fell in a trance, to the great discomfort of the King, who

skewed

shewed his skill to revive him, with stirring
lung and rubbing his pulses, spurring no
paine untill he had brought him to
breath, who being recovered, turning
his eyes as a man distracted, after he had
paused a while, said;

Worthy Prince, how blessed am I of
the Gods, that have granted me such
grace to behold my soveraigne, the
chief joy of my worldly joys, which
having seene, I care not how soone the
summons of Death attach me, my re-
quest being obtained, which have long
time cloyed their Deities with my redi-
ous Orisons for thy welfare, which see-
ing by their permission I have obtained.
Let it not be offensive unto your Maje-
stie to resolve me, what moved you to
leave your noble Father, and those your
Subjects that honored you, unto whom
your Excellence was more deare then
life.

Uncertaine, my loving *Alachan*,
might I be held and accounted amongst
men most ungratefull, if I should deny
thy request who hath shewed thy selfe to
firme a Friend unto me, therefore attend
what grievous maladies oppress me.

My

My good friend, quoth the King, is knowne to none so well as your selfe, whose paines for my recovery was such as I shall never requite, the cause I have heard thee and many learned of our Countrey affirme, they could never attaine to know, though for my recovery all meanes was by them and you sought, which made my griefe the more to increase.

The originall proceeding from a conceited fancy, Love mastering my heart, which with such power commanded all my interiour parts, as I expected no other but Death, which I rather would have subjected my selfe unto, then have revealed the same. But he that governeth mens thoughts, on the sodaine as you can witnesse, when all hope was past, armed mee with courage, whereon I tooke such hold, resolving to follow my determinations, that with thought thereof, I recovered in short time my health, which obtained, disguised in the attire of a Marchant, having provided me sufficient store of Coyne and jewels, I imbarqued my selfe for this Port, where without carrying any other
shew,

shew, J imployed by Brokers my stocke
to maintain my charge, all opportunity
was offered me in defence of the King
heere, and his daughter my *Queene*, to
shew my force against the *Turke* his in-
vading foe, wherein J obtained a happy
victory, and by that victory obtaining
some better reputation, the King hol-
ding me right deare, where by the hand
of the Princesse J received my Knight-
hood, a gift so pleasing to me as in the
worlds regiment was not to be found,
esteeming more the honour done me by
my sweet Mistrisse, the commander of
my heart, then all the Kingdomes of the
earth, for by her Love J lived, without
whose favour, I had long since rested
with the dead, she my *Machon*, which
untill my coming into her Countrey
J never saw, but onely by report of her
vermous and honourable demeanour,
whereof no man could say sufficient, so
enchanted my heart, that nothing but
her Love might preserve my life, so had
her vertues intangled me in love unto
her, whose Love it hath pleased the hea-
venly powers to bestow upon me,
whereof being possesst, no man hath
more

more cause to glorifie their Denies.

Thus my *Machaon*, have I acquainted thee with my cares, never before to any knowne: Love of this Lady, was the Load-starre brought me hither, through whose love I possess the crowne of *Trebisond* and Kingdome, whether no man so welcome as my *Machaon*, and so use me sweet Friend, quoth the King, as if I were *Machaon*, for next my Lady and Queene, thou possessest the entire affection of my heart.

The Queene which expected her Lords company for dinner, musing at his long stay, having no more company in his study but the Pilgrims, went herselfe to call him, and to breake their parley, thus pleasantly she said: My Lord, quoth the Queene, are your offences so great and your sins so many, that they require such long time for absolution, in my opinion, your Highness were good, if you have not finished to take some vyands, and then begin againe; for I assure you, it is dinner time long since.

Your Grace, quoth the King, is pleasantly disposed, I am glad to see you in so good a humour, especially my friend being

bring in place, which of the love you
 beare me, I intreat to bid welcome, for
 he is neare and deare unto me.

The *Queene* hearing the *King*, well
 noting his words, imagined that she
 was deluded, and that his reputation
 was not such as he had reported him-
 self to be, yet that her thoughts might
 breed no dislike through her silence, she
 courteously raised the *Pilgrime* from the
 ground, giving her hand to kisse, and
 with shew of the best content she could,
 bade him heartily welcome, beseeching
 the *King* to let her know what he was,
 that she might doe him that honour as
 his estate required.

Thankes *Madame*, quoth the *King*,
 for in honouring him, you shall shew
 your love to mee, which have great
 cause to requite him; to satisfy your
 Curious what he is being so poore in ac-
 tion, and so high in esteeme with me.
Know Madame, he was sometimes my
 Counsellor to my Father the *King*, and
 my Richfull Physician and Tutor in
 my minority, whose loyalty and love
 hath been such to me in times past, as
 since I abandoned my Country, he fol-
 lowed

tooke not onely his possessions, but his
place of honour, and what else he joyed
most in, committing his aged corpes
travell, and many Princes Countesse
hath travelled in search for me, of whom
he never had hope ever to behold againe
leaving my Realme in such wise as I did
them, whereof your Ladyships love was
the cause, though all the Physicians of
the country could not by their skill
find it. Therefore Madam, for my sake
love him, and give him your favoura-
ble countenance, which he will endea-
your to deserve.

The Queen put by her imaginations,
assured what the King said was true,
(where so please) she entertained so
graciously, as if he had been a Prince of
great worth, which joyed the aged men
and highly contented the King, who
not willing to delaye their stomackes,
which long before was ready for dinner
taking *Maister* by the hand, ledde
him to the presence, where sitting downe
to dinner, he placed him opposite
gainst him, giving him such a
countenance he could best frame to
love him, wherein the Queen for her
part

part was not behind.

Thus passed they Dinner with delight, not without great admiration of the Nobles, who had divers thoughts and cogitations in their minds, what he should be was so favoured.

Dinner ended, the King departed to his lodging, where hee tooke order for *Marchants* apparell, such as became a Councellour and a man of his gravity, passing the day in recounting off the estate of his owne subjects in *Carmania*, of whom, for that he would be assured, he presently tooke order for the dispatch of one of the Nobility to his Countrey, to whom hee gave strict charge not to be knowne of his successe in winning the Kingdom of *Thebisond*, but according to his Letters, whose contents imported his imprisonment in a forraigne Countrey, with command, to provide for his ransom, which was a great summe, and with that Messenger to repaire unto him, who lived obscured among his enemies, not desiring to be knowne unto any man, but only to that honourable Gentleman, whose love he had found such, as he could not requite, with like request

request that they entertaine him in such manner as they would him selfe if hee were present.

By this policie (the King thought to make tryall of their loves and loyalties) perswading him selfe, that if their readinesse were such, so deliver so much money as he required, that their loves to him was not allienared, considering what power that trash hath to command men; with this charge the noble Gentleman departed, whom to his fortunes by Sea wee leave: Returning to *Machaon*, who calling to remembrance the answer of the Oracle, he observed this in the King, who in recounting his travels, had taken upon him the shape of a Marchant: Afterwards, by the Princeesse Knighted; and lastly, through his good fortunes, crowned King, and possessed the Diademe of *Trebisand*: wherby he was assured, that he was Marchant, King, and Knight, which falling out so happily, he thanked the Gods for their fore-pailed comfort, and was in hope to see the end successively to ensue.

Here Gentiles, the History leaveth the Messenger bound for *Trebisand* to his

care

...full Ambassage, the King & Queene
in honourable content, continuing their
joyes in such pleasing delight, as their
loves might well be sufficient for all the
Court and Commons to follow, which
increased their loves that moved their en-
tire joyes. *Asacham* now called to the
place of a Counsellor, which he dischar-
ged with such wisdom and care, that
hee gained through civilitie the favour
of the Princeesse, and was of the Nobles
and Commons in high esteem.

Thus when the Messengers returne,
we leave the King and Queene to their
pleasures in Love, the Counsell to the
care of the Common weale, and the
Commons to their Orisons, who daily
praised their Gods for their Princes
choyse and with unfeigned meditations
bestowed themselves upon their lives in
all happiness amongst them, on whose
wells their goods did wholly depend.
What anguish for the Messengers re-
turne you shall have knowledge.

You shall be to entertaine this
with civilitie.

used
their
their
all the
which
their en-
to the
that
that
their
favour
nobles

turne,
their
the
the
daily
rinces
tions
ves in
ofe
end.

re-
re-
re-
re-
re-